

Pre-intermediate Grammar Pamphlet

E-mail:

Pardis@avayeshahir.com

Site Address:

www.avayeshahir.com

www.avayeshahir.ir

Tel: 02188546127/ 02188546128



@pardiseavayeshahir

KERNEL SENTENCES:	3
DEFINITION:	3
MODIFIERS OF NOUNS	9
M1	9
1.1. THE ARTICLES: DEFINITE AND INDEFINITE ARTICLES.....	9
1.2. DEMONSTRATIVES	31
1.3. POSSESSIVES.....	32
1.4 QUANTIFIERS.....	33
1.5 DISTRIBUTIVES	47
1.6 DIFFERENCE WORDS:.....	60
1.7 NUMBERS:	68
1.8 QUESTION WORDS.....	72
1.9 DEFINING WORDS	72
TENSES:	81
SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE	81
PRESENT CONTINUOUS TENSE	84
PRESENT PERFECT:.....	89
PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE:	97
SIMPLE PAST:	101
PAST CONTINUOUS:	106
PAST PERFECT:.....	108
PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE:	111
SIMPLE FUTURE TENSE:	115
FUTURE CONTINUOUS TENSE:.....	122
FUTURE PERFECT TENSE:	125
FUTURE PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE:	128
PASSIVES:	141
NOUNS:	153
VERBS:	176
1. ACTION VERBS	176
2. LINKING VERBS	176
3. HELPING VERBS.....	177
TWO WORD VERBS	189
ADJECTIVES:	213
ADVERBS:	244
MODALS:	259
PAST MODALS:	266
USED TO/BE USED TO: *	269
TAG QUESTIONS:	281
CAUSATIVE STRUCTURE:	285
PHRASES TO AVOID REPETITION:	288
WISH CLAUSES	291
PRONOUNS:	295
REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS	295
DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.....	295
RELATIVE PRONOUNS	295

SUBJECT PRONOUNS:	296
OBJECT PRONOUNS.....	296
PREPOSITIONS:	302

Kernel sentences¹:

Definition:

A kernel sentence is a simple, declarative² construction with only one verb and no modifiers³ or connectives that may be used in making more complex sentences. A kernel sentence is always active and affirmative. They are also known as a basic sentence or a kernel. For example, the sentence "Good⁴ tests are short" is made from two kernel sentences: (1) "Tests are short." (2) "Tests are good."

1. (Noun + Verb)

(Subject + Verb)

---The man teaches.

---The tall man over there usually teaches every day at my school.

2. (Noun + Verb + Adverb/Prepositional Phrase)

(Subj. + Verb + complement)

---My brother works in a factory.

---My hopelessly lazy brother grudgingly works in a modern, well-designed, and well-managed shoe factory.

---He teaches here.

---He sings beautifully.

3. (Noun + Verb + Noun)

(Subj. + Verb + Direct Object)

---That professor teaches English.

---That famous British professor brilliantly taught Shakespearean English last term.

4. (Noun + Verb + Noun + Noun)

(Subj. + Verb + IO + DO)

Complement[↓]

---That man teaches the boys English.

¹ جملات هسته ای

² جمله خبری

³ A word or phrase that is used with another word or phrase to limit or add to its meaning; the word 'fierce' in 'the fierce dog' is a modifier.

توصیف کننده

⁴ 'Good' is a modifier.

---Year after year, a quiet, patient American man dutifully teaches my boys very useful English.

→→→ Verbs used with this pattern: Afford, allot, ask, assign, bring, build, buy, cause, deny, do, envy, fetch, give, grant, guarantee, hand, lease, leave, lend, make, offer, order, owe, pass, pay, play, rent, sell, send, show, spare, tell, throw.

---While she was in prison, friends used to bring her books.

→→ No preposition is used with these verbs:

---I envy Mary her long eyelashes.

---Can you afford me a little of your time.

---It cost me 10 dollars.

5. (Noun + Verb + Noun + Noun/Adjective)

(Subj. + Verb + Object + Object Complement ♡)

→ **Complement:**

Complement (verb) means "go with". (Do not confuse with compliment). In clause syntax, the complement is anything which joins the verb and adds to the meaning of the subject. These complements can be either **direct object**, **indirect object**, **subject complement**, or **object complement**.

Object complement usually follows the direct object:

---Football makes me very happy.

---The voters elected Clinton president of the USA.

---That man called the teacher a genius.

---An unbelievably ignorant man just called our teacher a true genius!

---They kept him busy.

---I kept my knees warm.

---The sunset made the sky red.

- He thought the exercise silly.
- I always thought him an annoying child.
- The lawyer considered him innocent.
- The company appointed him director.
- The new law left many people worse off than before.
- She likes her coffee black.
- That noise is driving me crazy.
- They declared themselves bankrupt.
- I prefer my coffee black.
- News reports have called it the worst disaster of this century.
- Could you hold the door open for me, please.
- Should I send this letter first class?

6. (Noun + LV + Noun)

(Subject + LV + Complement)

➔➔➔The most common linking verbs are **be** (is, am, are, was, were, and so on), **seem**, **appear**, **look**, **feel**, **smell**, **sound**, **taste**, **become**, **grow**, **remain**, **stay**, and **turn**.

Subject complement usually follows the verb. The most common verb for a subject complement is the verb to be, but some other verb may be substituted where the meaning of be is expressed. These are called copular (= linking) verbs or simply copulas. In the examples, complements are in bold, copular verbs underlined:

- She is a doctor.
- The man is a teacher.
- The talkative man in the corridor is a well-known geography teacher.

7. (Noun + LV + Adjective/Adverb/Prepositional Phrase)

(Subj. + LV + Complement)

→→→→ Subject Complements: 1. Noun ⇨⇨ (Only To be)

2. Adjective

3. Adverb without *ly*

4. PP

---That man is intelligent.

---All bald-headed men are always very intelligent.

---The team grew tired.

---That program remains popular.

---I feel cold.

---They stayed in class.

---The students are feeling dazed and confused.

---He remained there.

8. (There + LV + Noun + Adverb/Prepositional Phrase)

(There + LV + Subject + Complement)

---There is a teacher in the classroom.

---There is an angry teacher in the noisy classroom.

---There will be a parade downtown.

Adverb

---There were two exams yesterday⇨⇨.

Adverb

⇨⇨ (1. adv. on the day before the present day; 2. n. day before the present day)

→→→ Some clauses begin with the introductory words *there* or *It* **rather than** with the subject of the sentence. These introductory words are sometimes called expletives.

The expletive *there* shows that someone or something exists, usually at a particular time or place. These sentences generally follow the pattern:

There + verb to be + subject

---There are many skyscrapers in New York City.

---There was a good movie on television last night.

9. (It + LV + Complement)

(It + LV + Adjective/Adverb/Prepositional Phrase/Noun)

---It was before sunrise.

pp

---It is rainy.

Adj.

---It is 30 miles.

N

---It is important to go.

Adj.

---It is here.

Adv.

---It is morning.

---It is a cold, rainy morning in March.

Some Clauses with It:

The expletive ***it*** is used in a number of different situations and patterns:

(with the verb to *be* + adjective + infinitive)

---*It is important to be* punctual for appointments.

(with the verb to *be* + adverbial + noun clause)

---*It was in 1959 that Alaska became a state.*

(with the verb to *take* + time phrase + infinitive)

---*It takes a long time to learn* a language.

(with the verb to *be* + noun + relative clause)

---*It was David who did most of the work.*

It and *there*, **along with** the verb and other sentence elements, may be missing from the stem.

MODIFIERS OF NOUNS

M1 = Determiners ⇨ noun (Articles, Demonstratives, Possessives, Quantifiers, Numbers, Distributives, Difference words, Question words)	
M2 = Adjective/Participle ⇨ Noun	
M3 = Noun ⇨ noun	
M4 = PP	Noun ⇨ prepositional phrase
M5 = Adverb	Noun ⇨ adverb
M6 = Infinitive	Noun ⇨ infinitive
M7 = Adj Clause	Noun ⇨ Adj Clause
M8 = Adjectival/participle phrases	Noun ⇨ Participle phrase
M9 = Appositives	Noun ⇨ Appositives

M1

1.1. The articles: Definite and Indefinite Articles

The, a, an

Use of a/an:

A. Before a singular noun which is countable (i.e. of which there is more than one) when it is mentioned for the first time and represents no particular person or thing:

---I need a visa.

---They live in a flat.

---He bought an ice-cream.

---When I was a student, I was very hardworking.

---I have a response, but I'm not sure that it is the response you want to hear.

B. Before a singular countable noun which is used as an example of a class of things:

---A car must be insured.

---A child needs love.

C. With a noun complement. This includes names of professions:

---It was an earthquake.

---She'll be a doctor.

---He is an actor.

D. In certain expressions of quantity:

---A lot of ---A couple of
---A great many ---A dozen (---One dozen is also possible)
---A great deal of

E. With certain numbers:

---A hundred ---A thousand

• Before **half** when half follows a whole number
 $1\frac{1}{2}$ kilos = ---One and a half kilos
or ---A kilo and a half

→→ ---One and a half days **aren't** enough to deal with the whole matter.
---A day and a half **isn't** enough to deal with the whole matter.

• But $1/2$ kg = ---Half a kilo (no **a** before **half**), though a + half + noun is **sometimes possible**
---Half an apple OR ---A half apple
---A half holiday ---A half portion ---A half share

- With $1/3$ $1/4$, $1/5$ etc. *a* is usual ---A third, ---A quarter etc., but one is also possible.
- One-seventh **but** two-sevenths

F. In expressions of price, speed, ratio, etc.:

---5 p a kilo ---£1 a meter ---Sixty kilometers an hour
---\$10 a dozen ---Four times a day (Here a/an = per)

G. In exclamations before singular, countable nouns:

---Such a long queue! ---What a pretty girl!

But

---Such long queues! ---What pretty girls! (Plural nouns, so no article)

H. A can be placed before Mr./Mrs./Miss + surname

---A Mr. Smith ---A Mrs. Smith ---A Miss Smith

A Mr. Smith means 'a man called Smith' and implies that he is a stranger to the speaker Mr. Smith, without *a*, implies that the speaker knows Mr. Smith or knows of his existence.

---John, there is *a* Mr. Smith here to see you.

I. Before nouns functioning as appositive:

---Hamlet, a play by Shakespeare, is worth seeing.

J. Before nouns which look plural.

---A means/species/TV series

---Newspaper advertisement **is an effective means for** finding qualified job applicants.

---Technology may be seen as a means to bring about emancipation.

---Language is an important means of communication.

---Mountain gorillas are an endangered species.

---Over a hundred species of insects are found in this area.

K. With these expressions:

---Take a seat

---Make a mistake

---Be in a hurry

---Take an interest in

---Keep an eye on

---Keep a close eye on

---Keep sth as a secret

---Take (a) pride in

---Make an attempt

L. Hair

---A hair ⇔ ---Two hairs

M. Before adjectives attributed to s.o.

---A liar (n.)

---A fool

---A thief

---A hero

---A genius

Omission of a/an

A/an is omitted:

A. Before plural nouns:

A/an has no plural form. So the plural of ---A dog is ---Dogs, and of ---An egg is ---Eggs

B. Before uncountable nouns:

---Software

---A piece of software

C. Before names of meals, except when these are preceded by an adjective:

---We have breakfast at six.

---He gave us a good breakfast.

➔ The article **a** is also used when it is a special meal given to celebrate something or in someone's honor.

---I was invited to dinner. (at their house, in the ordinary way)

but

---I was invited to a dinner given to welcome the new ambassador.

A/an and one:

A. a/an and one (adjective)

1. When counting or measuring time, distance, weight etc. we can use either a/an or one for the singular:

---£1 = a/one pound ---£1,000,000 = a/one million pounds

➔➔ But note that, in *The rent is £100 a week*, the **a** before *week* is not replaceable by one.

➔➔ In other types of statement *a/an* and *one* are not normally interchangeable, because *one + noun* normally means 'one only/not more than one' and *a/an* does not mean this.

---A *shotgun* is no good.

---One *shotgun* is no good.

Special uses of one:

(a) **One** (adjective/pronoun) used with **another/the other(s)**:

---One (boy) wanted to read, another/the others wanted to watch TV.

---One day, he wanted his lunch early, another day, he wanted it late.

(b) **One** can be used before day/week/month/year/summer/winter etc. or before the name of the day or month to denote a particular time when something happened:

---*One night*, there was a terrible storm.

---*One winter*, the snow fell early.

---*One day*, a telegram arrived.

(c) *One day* can also be used to mean 'at some future date'.

---One day, you'll be sorry you treated him so badly. (Some day would also be possible)

B. A/an and one (pronoun)

One is the **pronoun** equivalent of **a/an**:

---Did you get a ticket? Yes, I managed to get one.

*The plural of one used in this way is **some**.*

---Did you get tickets? Yes, I managed to get some.

Articles: a/an before noun phrases

1 Tick the correct sentence in each pair.

1 a. The company has captured a significant share of the market

b. The company has captured significant share of the market.

2 a. I think they *are* also right to certain extent

b. I think they *are* also right to a certain extent.

→ Don't forget to include **a/an** before an **adjective** + **singular noun** combination:

---He clearly has a good understanding of the issues.

---Many students have a part-time job while studying.

→ Notice the **position of adverbs** (*very, really, quite*, etc.) in these phrases:

---We have a very high percentage of women working in senior government posts.

---There was a really good atmosphere.

---There was quite a good atmosphere.

---In my view, this is quite a strong argument.

→ Some common noun phrases to be careful **with**:

- To **a** certain extent/degree: ---I agree with you to a certain degree.

- **A wide range/variety of:** ---We have a wide range of books to choose from.
- **A (n) large/small/equal number/amount of:** ---An equal number of men and women
- **A high/large/small/greater proportion/percentage of:** ---A small proportion of patients
- **A long time:** ---I haven't seen her for a long time.

2 Correct the mistake below.

---All competitors should have equal chance of winning.

---All competitors should.....

3 Use the words below in the same order to form correct sentences, adding any necessary articles or prepositions.

1. Only / small / number / troublemakers / were / responsible for / problems.
2. Computers / play / very / important / role / education / nowadays.
3. She / can't / afford to / study / full-time / basis.
4. Teenagers / should be / allowed / greater / degree / freedom
5. They / have / slightly / different / approach to / studying
6. We / had / one-week / intensive / training / course.
7. There / has been / gradual / increase / number / thefts.
8. They / offer / quite / wide / variety / courses.

The (the definite article):

A. Form:

The is the same for singular and plural and for all genders:

---*The boy* --- *The girl* ---*The day*
---*The boys* ---*The girls* ---*The days*

B. Use:

The definite article is used.

1. When the object or group of objects is unique or considered to be unique:

---(*The*) *earth* ---(*The*) *sea* ---*The sky* ---*The equator* ---*The stars*
---*The sun*

---***The*** sun was just dropping below ***the horizon***.

---The moon ---The environment ---The Internet
---The world ---The underground/the Tube/the metro/the subway
---The media
---The news
---The Church
---The **tourist/car/hotel/construction** industry/trade/business
---The **timber/fur/wool/wine/motor/building** industry/trade
---The **energy/computer/advertising/entertainment/music/hospitality** industry/business
---The Industrial Revolution

2. Before a noun which has become definite as a result of being mentioned a second time:

---His car struck a tree; you can still see the mark on the tree.
---I just got a new camera. The camera has an image-stabilization feature.

3. Before a noun made definite by the addition of a phrase or clause:

---The girl in blue ---The man with the banner ---The boy that I met
---The place where I met him
---The assignment that I just got in calculus is a real **killer**.

4. Before a noun which is clear to both the listener and the speaker:

---Ann is in the garden. (the garden of this house)
---Please, pass the salt. (the salt on the table)

Similarly,

---*The postman* (the one who comes to us),

---*The car* (our car),

---*The newspaper* (the one we read)

5. Before superlatives and first, second etc. used as adjectives or pronouns, and only:

---*The first week* ---*The best day* ---*The only way*

6. The + singular noun can represent a class of animals, things, plants, and inventions.

---*The whale* is in danger of becoming extinct.

---*The Rafflesia* is the world's largest flower.

---Alexander Graham Bell invented the telephone.

➔➔ But **man**, used to represent the human race, has no article.

---Man is still far more intelligent than the cleverest robot.

---Man is rapidly destroying the Earth.

---This is one of the most dangerous substances known to man.

---If oil supplies run out, *man* may have to fall back on the horse.

➔➔ *The* can be used before a member of a certain group of people:

---*The small shopkeeper* is finding life increasingly difficult.

The + singular noun as used above takes a singular verb. The pronoun is he, she, or it:

---*The first-class traveler* pays more, so he or she expects some comfort.

7. The + adjective represents a class of persons: ---*The old* = old people in general

---After the accident, the injured were taken to hospital.

---A nightclub used by the rich and the famous

---He looks for **the lonely**, **the lost**, and **the unloved**.

---The blind

---The old

---The dead

---The poor

---The deaf

---The rich

---The handicapped

---The unemployed

---The mentally ill

---The young = The youth

---The insurance was **invalid** for the **invalid**.

→→ All these adjectives cannot be used with possessives:

---~~The poor's~~ problems

---The problems of the poor ---Poor people's problems

---The quick and the dead

8. *The* is also used before names consisting of **noun + of + noun**

---The problem of homelessness

---The difficulty of **bringing up** children

---The pain of separation

---There is a problem with the availability of clean water in some villages.

---The distribution of income is uneven in most countries.

---On the whole, the standard of living is better in urban areas.

---Many residents complained about the frequency of bus services.

---This advance was **brought about** by the development of antibiotics.

---He made a number of recommendations for the improvement of staff training.

→ We use ***the development/improvement, etc. of*** something to describe a general process of change, **but** *developments/improvements, etc. in* something to describe specific changes:

---We try to keep up-to-date with new developments in information technology.

The is used before the adjectives east/west etc. + noun in certain names

---The East End/West End ---The East Indies/West Indies

---(The) North/South Pole (but *the* is normally omitted)

---South Africa ---North America ---West Germany ---Northern Ireland

The, however, is used before east/west etc. when these are nouns

---The north of Spain

---The north of Iran

---The West (political)

---The Middle East

Compare ---Go north (adverb in a **northerly** direction) with ---He lives in the north (noun an area in

the north)

→ **The** is used before certain proper names of seas, rivers, groups of islands, chains of mountains (but **not summits** ---Mount Everest ⇨ *no article with singular mountains*), plural names of countries, deserts, regions, planets such as Earth, Sun, and the Moon but not other planets:

---The Atlantic ---The Netherlands

---The Thames ---The Sahara

---The Azores ---The Crimea

---The Alps ---The Riviera

and before certain other names

---The City ---The Mall ---The Sudan

---The Hague ---The Strand ---The Yemen

9. It is also used before names of choirs, orchestras, pop groups etc.:

---The Bach Choir ---The Philadelphia Orchestra ---The Beatles

and before names of newspapers (---The Times) ⇨ not magazines ---Time Magazine, famous books (---The holy Koran/The Bible/The Torah) and ships, trains, and planes (---The Great Britain) ⇨ But *Great Britain*

10. “**The**” with names of people has a very limited use the + plural surname can be used to mean 'the family'

---The Smiths = Mr. and Mrs. Smith (and children)

The + singular name + clause/phrase can be used to distinguish one person from another of the same name

---We have two Mr. Smiths. Which do you want? I want the Mr. Smith who signed this letter.

11. Before body parts:

---He hit me in the head.

12. Before decades and centuries:

---In the 1800s ---In the twenties ---The 20th century

13. Before expressions of time and place:

---In the future/in the past

In the near future = in a future not far from now

---For the present (now, at this time)

➔ **at the present time**

But

---At present

---In the morning/afternoon/evening

---The front/back/middle/top/bottom

14. Before ethnic groups:

---The Indians

---The Aztecs

Nationalities:

---The English

---The Chinese

But

---English people

---Chinese people

But

The English language = English is...

The Chinese language = Chinese has...

15. Double comparatives:

---The sooner, the better

16. Superlative adjectives:

---The best

17. Country:

---In the country

18. With countries having plural s:

---The Netherlands

---The Philippines

---The British Isles

19. Musical instruments while playing is concerned:

---I play *the piano*.

20. The very, and The same modifying nouns:

---The very book...

21. To talk about something in general. We use the plural if we are talking about something in general; we use *the* to identify one specific example.

Compare:

---People with reading difficulties often have problems with numbers.

---**The number eight** is considered lucky in some countries.

Omission of the:

C. definite article is not used

1. Before names of places except as shown above or before names of people

2. Before **abstract nouns** except when they are used in a particular sense

---Man fears **death**.

but

---**The death of** the Prime Minister left his party without a leader.

---Two million people in the city live in abject poverty.

---The poverty of the people in the rural areas is not as visible as that of **the** people in the city.

---The coffee I had this morning was Brazilian.

3. After a noun in the **possessive case**, or **a possessive adjective**

---*The boy's uncle* = ---*The uncle of the boy*

---It is *my (blue) book* = ---*The (blue) book* is mine.

4. Before names of meals:

---The Scots have porridge for breakfast.

but

---The wedding dinner was held in her father's house.

5. Before names of games

---He plays golf.

6. Before parts of the body and articles of clothing, as these normally prefer a possessive adjective:

---Raise your right hand ---He took off his coat.

But notice that sentences of the type

---She seized the child's collar.

could be expressed

---She seized the child by the collar.

---I patted his shoulder.

could be expressed

---I patted him on the shoulder.

---The brick hit John's face.

could be expressed

---The brick hit John in the face.

Similarly in the passive

---He was hit on the head.

---He was cut in the hand.

7. *Nature* where it means the spirit creating and motivating the world of plants and animals etc. is used without *the*

---If you interfere with nature, you will suffer for it.

8. Omission of *the* before home, church, hospital, prison, school etc. and before work, sea and town:

A. home

When home is used alone i.e. is not preceded or followed by a descriptive word or phrase, the is omitted:

---He is at home.

But when *home* is preceded or followed by a descriptive word or phrase it is treated like any other noun:

---They went to *their new home*.

---We arrived *at the bride's home*.

---For some years, this was *the home of your queen*.

---A mud hut was *the only home* he had ever known.

B. *Bed, church, court, hospital, prison, school/college/university*

The is not used before the nouns listed above when these places are visited or used for their primary purpose.

---We go:

to bed to sleep or as invalids *to hospital* as patients *to church* to pray *to prison* as prisoners

to court as litigants etc. *to school/college/university* to study

Similarly

---We can be:

in bed, sleeping or resting

in hospital as patients

at church as worshippers

at school etc. as students

in court as witnesses etc.

We can be/get back (or be/get home) *from school/college/university*.

We can *leave school, leave hospital*, be released *from prison*.

When these places are visited or used for other reasons *the* is necessary:

---I *went to the church* to see the stained glass.

---He *goes to the prison* sometimes to give lectures.

C. sea

We go *to sea* as sailors.

To be at sea = to be on a voyage (as passengers or crew).

But

To go to or be at the sea = to go to or be *at the seaside*. We can also live *by/near the sea*.

➔➔➔➔ D. Work and office

Work (= place of work) is used without the:

---He's on his way *to work*.

---He is *at work*.

---He isn't back *from work* yet.

Note that *at work* can also mean '*working*'; *hard at work* = working hard:

---He's *hard at work* on a new picture.

Office (= **place of work**) needs *the*:

---He is *at/in the office*.

To be in office (without the) means to hold an official (usually political) position.

To be out of office = to be no longer in power.

E. Town

The can be omitted when speaking of the subject's or speaker's own town:

---We *go to town* sometimes to buy clothes.

---We *were in town* last Monday.

F. Do not use *the* with **jobs** or **titles** following their nouns:

---Kennedy, *president of America*, was one of the most famous politicians in the world.

Exercise:

Complete the sentences below using the words in brackets. Decide whether or not to use *the*, or whether to use the plural.

1. The main advantage of..... is that it gives us access to information from all over the world. (Internet)
2. My father has fished in.....all over Australia. (*river*)
3. Life inis very different from life in my country. (*America*)
4. According to the graph,..... of people moving into the city each year has more than doubled. (*number*)
5. The total figure for 1976 was.....as the total figure for 1982. (*same*)
6. Obesity is much more common in.....than in my country. (*USA*)
7. The graph shows that.....increase occurred in 1999. (*greatest*)
8.travels aroundat a speed of 3,700 kilometres per hour. (*moon, earth*)

Are these sentences right or wrong? Correct those containing mistakes.

1. A diet high in cholesterol is bad for heart.
2. The introduction of computerised systems led to an increase in unemployment.
3. We all benefit from development of new technologies.
4. We were unhappy about quality of the food available.
5. Last year, the airline saw a 20% improvement in delays.
6. There have been changes in the relationship between the teacher and the student.
7. Rates vary depending on standard of accommodation you choose.
8. She focused on the role of a family in a child's education.

Underline the correct article: *a/an/the* or - (no article).

1. This test measures *a/the/-* concentration of acid in *a/the/-* stomach.
2. It took *an/the/-* incredibly long time for the results to be announced.
3. There have been *an/the/-* improvements in *a/the/-* quality as well as *an/the/-* efficiency.
4. *A/The/-* high percentage of businesses fail in the first year.
5. The study found that *a/the/-* significant number of homes had two cars.
6. This shows *a/the/-* sharp decline in *a/the/-* proportion of aid allocated to health.

7. He studied the role of *an/the/-* extended family in caring for older people.
8. These reforms have succeeded to *a/the/-* certain extent.
9. All children should receive *a/the/-* basic education.
10. The HR department deals with *a/the/-* recruitment of new staff.
11. What is *a/the/-* significance of these figures?
12. She has *an/the/-* excellent communication skills.

Rewrite the sentences below using the word given and making any changes necessary to keep the meaning the same.

1. The council wants to encourage new businesses to develop.

development

2. His main role is to assess how good the service is for customers.

quality.....

3. There has been an increase in the amount of goods transported by road.

transportation.....

4. Whether mothers return to work often depends on whether childcare is available.

availability

5. Many of the changes are due to the fact that tourism has grown in the region.

growth.....

Tests:

1. What's the matter? Reza never shuts

1. door when he comes into room.
2. door when he comes into the room.
3. the door when he comes into room.
4. the door when he comes into the room.

2. "What did John do?"

"He enteredold man's room quickly because the man was seriously ill."

1. in the 2. into the 3. inside the 4. the

3. Mary is only student who speaks three different foreign languages perfectly in our class.

1. a 2. an 3. the 4.

4. When I was still a schoolboy, I was interested in history and wanted to study history of my country.

1. a 2. an 3. the 4.

5. Our grandfather often says his prayers early in morning.
1. the 2. a 3. an 4.
6. In Islam, much attention has been paid to education of children.
1. a 2. an 3. 4. the
7. It was raining outside, so I used umbrella my brother bought me yesterday.
1. the 2. a 3. an 4.
8. I had a toothache, so I made appointment with the dentist.
1. a 2. an 3. the 4.
9. I say that Ali can play outside, but he mustn't leave yard.
1. a 2. 3. an 4. the
10. Which is best restaurant in your city?
1. a 2. an 3. the 4. one
11. They had lunch at home last Monday.
1. a 2. 3. an 4. the
12. I want to study interesting book tonight.
1. a 2. the 3. 4. an
13. I think book which you are reading is very interesting.
1. the 2. a 3. an 4. one
14. Nowadays, one-storey house is much more expensive than an apartment.
1. a 2. an 3. the 4.

پاسخ تست حروف تعریف

۱. ۴ به خاطر معرفه بودن در و اتاق
۲. ۴ فعل enter با حرف اضافه استفاده نمی شود.
۳. ۳ جمله به صفت عالی اشاره دارد.
۴. ۳ تاریخ کشور (با of معرفه شده است)
۵. ۱ قبل از ترکیبات زمانی
۶. ۴
۷. ۱ چون چتر معرفه است (یعنی با my brother bought me yesterday معرفه شده)
۸. ۲
۹. ۴
۱۰. ۳ صفت عالی
۱۱. ۲ برای وعده های غذایی استفاده نمی شود.

۱۲. ۴ کتاب نکره ومفرد است وصفت قبل از آن با حرف صدادار شروع شده

۱۳. ۱

۱۴. ۱، به خاطر این که ه اینجا حرف صدادار نیست اینجا صدای /w/ (و) دارد.

Tests:

- 1- Do you see boy playing over there? He is one who broke my car's windscreen yesterday.
A) a/-
B) the/the
C) the/-
D) -/the
E) a/the
- 2- **Inca** was civilization,people of which were more cultivated than any other civilization of that time.**
A) The/a/the
B) The/a/-
C) An/the/the
D) -/the/a
E) The/-/-
- 3- For most of past two and half..... million years human beings left their garbage where it felt.
A) -/a/ the
B) a /the /a
C) the /the /the
D) the/a/-
- 4- He says that at end of busy day, sleep is best tonic.
A) the / the / -
B) an / a / a
C) the / a / the
D) - / - / the
E) the / - / -

Tests: Peterson's Success

1. The most butterfly eggs are coated with a sticky substance that holds them to
A B C
plants.
D
2. A number of large insurance companies have the headquarters in Hartford,
A B C D
Connecticut.
3. To be effective, an advertisement must first attract an attention.

A B

C

D

4. Virgin Islands National Park features a underwater preserve with coral reefs and colorful tropical fish.

A

B

C

D

5. Arthritis, a painful swelling of the joints, is often associated with elderly people, but can afflict young as well.

A

B

C

D

6. Wilmington is an only large city in the state of Delaware.

A

B

C

D

7. About the third of the Earth's land surface is covered by relatively flat plains.

A

B

C

D

8. In the 1920s, gasoline companies began giving away free road maps to the customers.

A

B

C

D

9. The Tropic of Cancer is imaginary line that marks the northern boundary of the Earth's tropical zone.

A

B

C

D

10. Hereford cows are one of most common breeds of cattle raised for beef.

A

B

C

D

11. American soprano Kathleen Battle taught music in elementary school before beginning the career as a professional singer.

A

B

C

D

12. In 1891, first state law to help local communities pay for highways was passed in New Jersey.

A

B

C

D

13. Lumber is dried and seasoned in an heated chamber called a dry kiln.

A

B

C

D

14. Grandfather Mountain, a highest mountain in the Blue Ridge mountain range, is in North Carolina.

A

B

C

D

15. The eardrum is the only organ in a human body that is capable of detecting

A B C
changes in air pressure.
D

16. It was around 1925 that accurate, convenient system for recording the
A B C
choreography of ballet was developed.
D

1. most
2. their
3. attention
4. an underwater
5. the young
6. the only
7. a third/ one third
8. (their) customers
9. an imaginary
10. the most common
11. her career
12. the first
13. a heated
14. the highest
15. the human
16. an accurate

Tests: Rahnama

1. The watt is named after James Watt, the British engineer who developed
A B
the steam engine in 1760s.
C D

2. Methane is a odorless burning gas and is the main ingredient of natural gas.
A B C D

3. The alcohol acts as a narcotic on the nervous system and the brain.
A B C D

4. Zachary Taylor was first president to be elected from a state west of the Mississippi River.
A B C D

5. Barnacles, which are related to lobsters, shrimp, and crabs, make strongest
A B C D

glue.

6. In the 1860s, Louis Pasteur discovered that bacteria in air caused the perishable
A B C

food to go bad.
D

7. Land covers almost third of the earth's surface, of which two-thirds is too cold
A B C D
or too dry for farming.

8. "Old Faithful" in the Yellowstone National Park is probably the world's most
A B C D
famous geyser.

9. Thermographs are special pictures that show the variation in heat emitted by
A B C
different areas of body.
D

10. The most of the energy used in our homes and factories is generated from
A B
coal, oil, and natural gas.
C D

11. The scholarship that Wilson received to study history at Cambridge presented
A B C
an unique opportunity.
D

12. Ford designed the first large-scale assembly line at plant in Highland Park, Michigan.
A B C D

1.2. Demonstratives

This, that, these, those, such, such a (n)
the very = exact, particular, specific

خاص و همين و همان

---That post marks the beginning of the mined area.

---This is the very book I've been looking for all month.

---You're the very person we need for the job.

1.3. Possessives

My, your, his, her, its, our, their + Noun/Ving (gerund)

---Because of your leaving late, you will have to take a taxi in order to catch your train.

---Professor Jones was angry **at** my coming late to class every day.

---I really **appreciate** your trying to arrive on time.

---We objected to their calling at this hour.

---I approve of one's living on his or her own before marriage.

---The government's imposing new deadlines generated a lot of discussion.

---The referee's delaying the start of the game allowed the field to dry.

---I resented their interrupting our conversations.

---I don't like his being punished.

---Bob's adjusting the antenna did not improve the reception.

Test:

My to get nominated for the office is enough; I don't care if I win or not.

A

B

C

D

1.4 Quantifiers

(A) Few, (a) little, much, many, a lot of, lots of, plenty of, a great deal of, a large quantity/ amount of, a large number of, a number of ⇒ the number of, most, some, any, several, enough.

اسم ق ش ج + few (A)

Few:

تعداد بسیار کمی

---There are few cherries; we'd better go and buy some.

---I'm an unhappy person. I have few friends.

---I have had few problems with the system.

A few:

---There are a few plums. I don't think we need to buy any today.

---I'm a happy person. I have a few friends.

---She sold a few of the books.

---A few of the soldiers were wounded.

Few and far between:

کم، قلیل، کمیاب، نادر

---In that town, good restaurants are few and far between.

رستوران در آن شهر کم یافت می شود.

No fewer than: used to show that you consider **a number to be surprisingly large**

---No fewer than five hundred delegates **attended** the conference.

---No fewer than five children died.

شمار بچه هایی که مردند از پنج کمتر نبودند.

Not a few:

بسیار، خیلی

---Not a few of the students have cars.

شمار دانش آموزانی که اتومبیل دارند کم نیست.

اسم غ ق ش + little (A)

Little:

مقدار بسیار کمی

---There's little time left. (= We do not have enough time left.)

---I'm very poor. I have little money.

---I have had **little** information about the system.

---I have little room to work in.

---There is little hope left.

امید زیادی باقی نمانده است.

A little:

مقداری

---There's a little time left. (= We still have enough time left.)

---I still have a little money left.

---I'm not so poor. I have a little money.

---A little Knowledge is a dangerous thing.

اطلاع کم داشتن باعث خطر و شرمندگی می شود.

---John thought he knew how to take care of the garden, but he killed all the flowers. A little knowledge is a dangerous thing.

Only + a few / a little + ... = Few/Little

---Only a few dollars have been budgeted for supplies.

فقط چند دلار به تهیه مایحتاج اختصاص یافته است.

---We have only a little homework for Monday.

There are few, if any, criterion that are more important than honesty in the
A B C D
assessment of a person's character.

A lot of/Lots of + اسم غ ق ش
اسم ق ش ج

A lot of:

---A lot of money

---A lot of students

→→→---He's got a lot of bottle.

A lot: adv.

---On holiday, we walk and swim a lot.

---The government seems to change its mind a great deal.

Plenty of + اسم غ ق ش
اسم ق ش ج

Plenty of:

---Don't rush, there's plenty of time.

---Plenty of shops take checks.

A great deal of/A large amount of + اسم غ ق ش

---I have thrown a large amount of old clothing.

---Mr. Lucas has spent a great deal of time in the Far East.

A great/large/small number of + اسم ق ش جمع → A plural verb is needed after a / an (large, small, etc.) number of

---A large number of people have applied for the job.

Much + اسم غ ق ش

Much: adj.

Great in quantity, measure, or degree:

1- زیاد، بسی، فراوان، خیلی، مقدار زیاد

---There is much truth in what you say.

در آنچه که می گویی حقیقت بسیاری نهفته است.

---There is *much* debate about the project.

Much: adv.

---Much heavier

---I'm much happier now.

اکنون خیلی خوشحالم.

---We much prefer the country to the town.

---Janet much enjoyed her stay with your family.

---I very much like your brother.

Much: n. much can be used alone ⇨ A great quantity, measure, or degree:

---Much of his research was unreliable.

بیشتر، بخش عمده

---He gave much of his wealth to the poor.

او بخش بزرگی از دارایی خود را به بینوایان داد.

---Much of the rest belongs to me.

بیشتر باقی مانده به من تعلق دارد.

NOTE:

---She didn't gain much experience. (She gained **very little** experience.)

---She didn't gain a lot of experience. (She learnt **something** from it.)

→→→---Much interesting memories¹

خاطرات بسیار جالب

اسم + بسیار + صفت

Much polluted air²

Much brilliant gold

1. [much+ adj] + countable nouns

2. [much+ adj] + uncountable nouns

[much] + adj+ [uncountable nouns]

To be not much of a something = to not be a good example of something or not be very good at something:

---I'm not much of a football player, I'm afraid.

---It wasn't really much of a storm.

---He is not much of a cook.

آشپز چندان خوبی نبود

---He is not much of a teacher.

Many + اسم ق ش ج

Many:

1. شمار / تعداد زیادی، بسیار، خیلی، چندین، تعداد زیادی

---Many soldiers were killed.

شمار زیادی سرباز کشته شدن.

---He owns many houses.

او چندین خانه دارد.

---Many students

تعداد زیادی دانشجو

---There are many concerns about the project.

TOEFL/IELTS: If we have a pronoun or a determiner plus a noun after many or much, we need **of**.

Many/Much of + determiner (a, the, this, my...) + noun.

---You can't see much of a country in a week.

---**Much of the work**/Much **of it** was done by me.

---I won't pass the exam. I have missed many of my lessons.

---**Many of her friends**/Many **of them** live abroad.

Idiomatic expressions:

A good many (or a great many) = a lot of, numerous

چندین، بسیار

---I remember meeting him a good many years ago.

بیاد دارم که چندین سال پیش او را ملاقات کردم.

The meaning of **not many** and **not much** is similar to the one expressed by (very) few and **(very) little**, respectively:

---There aren't many traffic cones/There are (very) few traffic cones.

---We haven't got much jam/We've got (very) little jam.

The only difference between the four sentences above is that the ones with **(very) few** and **(very) little** connote a smaller quantity.

Many: Many can be used alone.

---Many of her friends/Many of them live abroad.

---**Many were** still lying where they had been injured.

---**Many hands make light work.**

با اتحاد کارها آسان می شود.

---Many hands make light work, and when the three men worked together they quickly finished moving the furniture.

Too many chiefs and not enough Indians.

مدیر زیاد ولی کارگر کم

---I can't find anyone to do the photocopying. There are too many chiefs and not enough Indians in this company.

Too many cooks spoil the broth (UK)/soup (US).

آشپز که دوتا شد آش یا شور می شه یا بی نمک.

---There were so many people working on the same project; no one knew what anyone else was doing. I think **it was a case of** too many cooks.

Exercise:

1. Tick the correct sentence in each pair.

- 1 a. I don't have many time to complete my assignment.
 b. I don't have much time to complete my assignment.
- 2 a. When I did a search on my computer, I could only find a few informations about the topic.

b. When I did a search on my computer, I could only find a little information about the topic.

→→→TOEFL: As Many As

Remember that *as many as* is used before a specific number to express an estimate that *does not exceed the number*.

Avoid using *as many* instead of *as many as*. Avoid using *much* instead of *many* before a specific number.

→→Note: Comparative estimates with *as much as* are also used before a *specific number that refers to weight, distance, or money*.

For example,

✓---*As much as ten pounds,*

✓---*As much as two miles, or*

✓---*As much as twenty dollars*

✗---We expect as much as thirty people to come.

✓---We expect as many as thirty people to come.

✗---There are as many fifteen thousand students attending summer school.

✓---There are as many as fifteen thousand students attending summer school.

✗---The children can see as much as twenty-five baby animals in the nursery at the zoo.

✓---The children can see as many as twenty-five baby animals in the nursery at the zoo.

✗---Many as ten planes have sat in line waiting to take off.

✓---As many as ten planes have sat in line waiting to take off.

✗---State University offers as much as two hundred major fields of study.

✓---State University offers as many as two hundred major fields of study.

---It has been estimated that.....one hundred thousand men participated in the gold rush of 1898.

(A) approximate

(B) until

- (C) as many as
(D) more

---It is generally accepted that the common cold is caused by as much as forty strains of viruses that may be present in the air at all times.

→→→ **Many a(n)** + اسم ق ش مفرد = **Many** + اسم ق ش ج

---I've told you many a time not to ride your bike on the pavement.

---It remained a mystery for many a year.

سالها

---Many a man has martyred in the way of truth.

چه بسا مردانی که در راه حقیقت شهید شده اند.

---Many a man and woman has wished that he or she had had a better education.

---I have been to the top of the Eiffel tower many a time.

---**Many a white lie better than a seditious truth.**

دروغ مصلحت آمیز به از راست فتنه انگیز.

Most + 1. اسم ق ش جمع

اسم غ ق ش 2.

Most: adj.

In the majority of instances:

---Most operations are successful.

---Most religious and racial discrimination is based on ignorance.

غ ق ش

بیشتر تبعیضات مذهبی و نژادی به علت جهل است.

Most: n.

The greatest quantity, amount, or degree; the utmost:

---The most I can hope for is a passing grade.

Most: adv.

---It's a most puzzling case.

---Most certainly

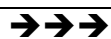
---Most quickly

---A most interesting story

---That is most kind of you.

---Thank you for a most interesting afternoon.

---Iran's most beautiful city is Shiraz.



1. ---Most difficult questions

(very)

---Most difficult questions

(اکثر)

2. ---The Most difficult questions

M1

Some + اسم غ ق ش

اسم ق ش ج

اسم ق ش مفرد

Some:

برخي، بعضي

---Some nights

بعضي شبها

---This criticism **applies** to some students only.

این انتقاد فقط در مورد برخي از شاگردان صادق است.

---I have some responses, but I am not sure that they are the responses you want to hear.

Some: pron.

برخي از مردم ، بعضي ها ، برخي ها

---Some agree and some disagree.

بعضي ها موافقت و بعضي ها مخالف.

---Some like it cooked.

برخي مردم پخته آن را دوست دارند.



---They have been married for some years.

چند سالي است كه ازدواج کرده اند.

---I waited there some hours.

چند ساعت آنجا منتظر شدم.



---Some eighty houses

حدود هشتاد خانه

---Some ten of them

قريب به ده نفر از آنها

(آمریکا - عامیانه) جالب توجه، چشمگیر، معرکه

---It was some dinner!

عجب شامي بود!

---That was some party last night!

←← (عامیانه) كمي، قدري، يك خرده، يك ذره

---Eat some!

قدري بخور!

---I slept some.

كمي خوابيدم.



---Have some patience!

يك خرده صبر داشته باش!

←← (آمریکا - عامیانه) يك خيلي، يك عالمه

---You must run some to catch up with them.

براي رسيدن به آنها بايد خيلي بدوي.

←← يك، - ي

---Some person called me.

شخصي مرا صدا زد.

---I'll do it someday.

روزي اين كار را خواهم كرد.

---A request for help from some man in the hall

درخواست كمك از سوي مردی در سالن

---Some book

كتابي

←← مقداري

---I have bought some agricultural land.

من مقداري زمين کشاورزي خريده ام.

---We have some good honey.

ما (مقداري) عسل خوب داريم.



---Some of the butter

بخشي از کره

---Some of the cars

بعضي از ماشينها

---Some of the book is...

---Some of the books are...

→→ Some or other + singular verb

کسی

---Some or other has stolen the money.

Any → 1. In positive statements + اسم ق ش مفرد

2. In negative statements/Questions + اسم ق ش مفرد

اسم ق ش ج

اسم غ ق ش

Any:

هر، هر کدام

---Any student may answer.



هر شاگردی می تواند جواب بدهد.

---Any teacher knows this.



---Any one of them

هر يك از آنها

---Take any book you like.

هر کتابي را که دلت می خواهد بردار.

2- هيچ، هيچ گونه



---He doesn't tolerate any criticism.

او تحمل هیچ گونه خرده گیری را ندارد.

---I don't have any time.

اصلا وقت ندارم.

---Are there any chairs in this class?

↑

↑

---Is there any money left?

↑

---Did you see any accident in the street when you were coming?

3-Ø، مقداری، -ی

→→

---They didn't have any money to give me.

آنها پولی نداشتند که به من بدهند.

4- (کاربرد به عنوان ضمیر)

---By any means

از هر راهی، هرطور که شده، به هر طریق

---In any case

به هر حال، به هر صورت، در هر حال

Anywhere ←←← در جملات مثبت به معنی هر جا و در جملات منفی به معنی هیچ کجا می باشد.

A: I will go anywhere she goes. هرجایی که او برود من خواهم رفت.

B: They shouldn't go anywhere. آنها نباید هیچ کجا بروند.

anything در جملات مثبت به معنی هر چیز و در جملات منفی به معنی هیچ چیز می باشد و همواره با فعل مفرد می آید.

A: There isn't anything in the fridge.

B: I am very hungry; I will eat anything.

anyone/anybody در جملات مثبت به معنی هر کس و در جملات منفی به معنی هیچ کس می باشد. در صورتی که فاعل

جمله باشند، فعل جمله مفرد است. (همانطور که گفته شد به عنوان سوم شخص مفرد محسوب می شوند)

A: Anyone/Anybody knows the result of presidential election.

B: He didn't see anybody/anyone in the back yard.

anyone/anybody در جمله A به معنی هر کس و در جمله B به معنی هیچ کس است.

×---It is crystal clear that **each person could not** cope with communities' problems.

اسم ق ش ج + Several

Several:

1. Some; an amount that is not exact but is fewer than many; more than two but not very many

---There were 70 men and **only several women**.

هفتاد مرد و فقط چند زن آنجا بودند.

---A stay of several months in England...

اقامت چند ماهه در

→→→ 2. Separate; different:

مجزا، مختلف، جدا

---Her knowledge of three several languages was perfect.

NP (HN)

NP

سواد او در سه زبان متمایز کامل بود.

---Their ownership is several and not joint.

Exercise:

1. Tick the correct sentence in each pair.

- 1 a. There are several problem with this idea.
b. There are several problems with this idea.
- 2 a. Many charity organisations provide a great deal of help.
b. Many charity organisation provides a great deal of help.

Enough + اسم ق ش ج
اسم غ ق ش

Enough:

---I don't have enough room.

---He has enough money to live well.

---We have enough time to walk to the office.

---We have time enough to walk to the office. (Exception)

وقت کافي براي پياده رفتن به اداره را داريم.

---He is old enough to travel **by himself**.

---**Surprisingly (enough)**, he, too, collects stamps. تعجب آور اين است که او هم تمير جمع مي کند.

---Interestingly (enough), none of their three children ever married.

---Interestingly (enough), Pearson made no attempt to deny the rumour.

---I, oddly enough, feel tired.

---Ironically enough/ironically, for a man who hated war, he would have made a superb war cameraman.

---She said, convincingly enough, that she was innocent.

---Sadly enough/ sadly, the forests of Sulawesi are now under threat.

---Enough is enough!

---I have had enough.

1.5 Distributives = referring to the members of a group individually, as the adjectives *each* and *every*.

توزیعی

All, both, half, either, neither, each, every, no

All + اسم ق ش ج

اسم ق ش مفرد

اسم غ ق ش

All:

1- همه، تمام، کلیه ی، جمیع، قاطبه، سربسر

---All the people

همه ی مردم

---All the professors resigned.

تمامی استادان استعفا دادند.

---I read all the books.

تمام کتابها را خواندم.

---Life is not all pleasure.

زندگی همه اش لذت نیست.

---We all give our lives.

همه سر بسر تن به کشتن دهیم.

All of + the + noun

All of + object pronoun (plural)

All/ All the + noun

→→

---All (of) the book

---All books

→→→

The only quantifier which equals its Persian equivalents

---All of the apple is rotten.

---All of the apples are rotten.

→→→ All and all of are both possible before nouns with determiners (the, my, this)

---All (of) my friends.

→→→ Before a noun without a determiner, we do not normally use of.

---All children can be difficult.

→→→ Do not say

*---She has been studying all ~~the~~ day/all ~~the~~ night/all ~~the~~ morning/all ~~the~~ afternoon/all ~~the~~ evening/all ~~the~~ week/all ~~the~~ month/all ~~the~~ year, but

---She has been studying all day/all night/all morning..., that is, we omit *the* and the preposition *of* in the expression all + day, night, and so on. Note also all (of) the time, all (of) the summer, etc. *The* is optional in the phrase all (the) year round.

Notice the following as well: throughout/all through the night, the day, and so forth.

Either + اسم ق ش مفرد

Either: use this to talk about one of two people, places, or things, especially when it does not matter which one

→→ Any one of two; one or the other:

---Wear either coat.

يکي يا ديگري، يکي از دوتا

→→ One and the other; each, both:

---She had a ring on either hand.

هر يك از دوتا

---Either class

هر يك از كلاهها

---You can use either hand.

مي تواني هريك از دو دستت را به كار بيري.

---He had a knife in either hand.

او در هر دست يك چاقو داشت.

---Applications are welcomed from people of either sex and any age.

Either: pron.

1. One or the other:

---There are two roads into the town, and you can take either. 'Either will do'.

---We have two apples; you can take either but not both.

دو عدد سيب داريم، تو مي تواني يکي را برداري ولي نه هردو را.

تذکر: either of قبل از تعريف کننده هاي مانند my, these, the,..., etc. مي آيد.

either of قبل از اسامي جمع بکار مي رود و اغلب با فعل مفرد مي آيد.

---You can use either of the bathrooms.

---Either of the children *is* perfectly capable of looking after the baby.

---I don't like either of my math teachers.

Neither + فعل مفرد (مثبت) + اسم ق ش مفرد

Neither:

---Neither class

هيچ يك از کلاسها

(از دوتا) هيچکدام، هيچيك (از آن دو)

---Neither boy went.

---Neither of them was invited.

---He made two suggestions but neither was accepted.

---"Will you have tea or coffee?" "Neither, thanks".

((چاي مي خواهيد يا قهوه؟)) ((هيچکدام، ممنون))

---Neither candidate is having an easy time with the press.

---On two occasions, she was accused of stealing money from the company, but in neither case was there any evidence to support the claims.

TOEFL:**Neither/either + NP + nor/or + اسم جمع + plural verb****Neither/either + NP + nor/or + اسم مفرد + singular verb****Neither of/either of + فاعل جمع + singular verb**

---Neither my sister nor my brothers go to university.

---Neither my sisters nor my brother goes to university.

---Neither of/either of the students speak/speaks a foreign language.---Either (one) of them is competent to do the job.---Neither of the two pieces was familiar to him.**TOEFL:****None of the + 1. غ ق ش + singular verb****2. ق ش ج + plural verb**---None of the counterfeit money has been found.---None of the students have finished the exam yet.

---I planted hundreds of seeds but none have come up.

---Everybody loved her, but none more than I did.

توجه داشته باشید که none در صورتی که معنی جمله واضح باشد به تنهایی بکار می رود:

---How many of the books have you read? None.

در اینجا none نقش ضمیر را دارد (یعنی جای no books قرار گرفته است).

تذکر: none مفهوم جمله را منفي مي کند.

Each + اسم ق ش مفرد**Each:** adj.

1. Every one of two or more considered individually or one by one:

---Each stone in a building

---A hallway with a door at each end

1- هر

---He called me each day and asked about my circumstances.

↑

هر روز به من تلفن مي زد و جويائي احوال مي شد.

---Each student was given a ticket.

به هر شاگرد يک بليط دادند.

---Each year

هر سال

Each: pron.

2. Every one individually; each one:

---Each had a different solution **to** the problem.

2- هر يك، هر کدام

each of: قبل از اسم جمع و توصيف كننده هايي مانند the, my, these, مي آيد و با فعل مفرد همراه است.

---Each of them has to pay five dollars.

هر يك از آنها بايد پنج دلار بدهد.

---Three shots were fired, each missing the mark.

سه گلوله شليك شد و هر سه به خطا رفت.

Each: adv.

3. **To, from, or for each;** apiece = each; for each one:

---They cost a dollar each.

به هريك، به هرکدام

---She gave us two apples each.

به هرکدام از ما دو سيب داد.

5- يکي، دانه اي

---The oranges cost 2000 tomans each.

پرتقال ها دانه اي دوهزار تومان است.

---Each other

همديگر، يکديگر

---The two sisters love each other.

دو خواهر همديگر را دوست دارند.

→→→ For more than two people use one another.

---These 3 students are fighting **with** one another.

Every + اسم ق ش مفرد

Every: (Always adj. and always before a noun)

1- هر

---Every man and woman

↑

هر مرد و زن

---Every teacher knows this.

هر معلمي اين را مي داند.

→→

---Every few days

هر چند روز (هر چند روز يکبار)

---Every year

هر سال

---Every day

هر روز

---To work hard for every penny

براي هر شاهي جان کندن

2- همه، همه گونه، همه ی، تمام

---Every citizen was there.

همه شهروندان آنجا بودند.

---They have every needed facility.

آنان همه تسهيلات لازم را دارا مي باشند.

---Every student passed (the test).

همه شاگردان قبول شدند.

---I have read every one of his books.

من همه کتابهاي او را خوانده ام.

3- هر...، هر... يکبار

---Take this medicine every three hours.

اين دارو را هر سه ساعت يکبار بخوريد.

No:

Adj. →

ترجمه = 1. هيچ 2. اسم + ي نکره 3. Ø فعل منفي

No+ 1. غ ق ش

---There's no bread left.

2. ق ش ج

---No trees grow in the desert.

3. ق ش مفرد

---No tree grows in the desert.

1. Not any:

---No money

2- هيچ (نشان منفي)

---There are no mistakes in your composition.

انشاي تو (هيچ) غلط ندارد.

---I have no doubt.

شکي ندارم.

---I have no time.

وقت ندارم.

---No animal lives there.

↑

هيچ جانوري آنجا زيست نمي کند.

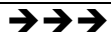
---He gave no answer.

او پاسخي نداد.

→→→ Note: No body or nobody? Use these exemplar sentences as a guide:

---It was believed that he had been murdered, but NO BODY was ever found, and so nothing could be proved. (= no corpse) → Corps.

---NOBODY likes going to the dentist. (= no one)

**WITH COUNT NOUN**

A(n), the, some, any
This, that, these, those
None, one, two, three,...
Many
A lot of
A number of
(A) few
Fewer... than
More....than

WITH NON-COUNT NOUN

The, some, any
much (usually in negatives or questions)
this, that
none
a lot of
a large amount of
a little
less....than
more....than

Tests:

1. I had friends when I first came here.
1. a little 2. less 3. more 4. a few
2. He will have to save money for his future.
1. few 2. a few 3. a little 4. many
3. We have rain in the North.
1. many 2. much 3. any 4. a large number of
4. There is a money in Central Bank.
1. large amount of 2. large number of 3. many 4. a few
5. How time do you spend on your homework?
1. much 2. many 3. some 4. any
6. There is snow on high mountains in summer.
1. many 2. a few 3. few 4. a little
7. How times do you go to the U.S. in a year?
1. often 2. much 3. many 4. some
8. Put bread on the table.
1. few 2. a few 3. many 4. some
9. They drink water with their meals.
1. a lot of 2. many 3. a large number of 4. a few
10. There arewild animals in jungles.
1. a large amount of 2. much 3. a little 4. plenty of
11. Have you ever seen a snake? Yes,..... times.

1. many 2. much 3. any 4. little

12. How..... time do you usually spend on your English every day?

1. many 2. much 3. any 4. a little

13. Is there water in the bottle?

1. much 2. a few 3. few 4. many

14. Mary has answered questions.

1. any 2. a little 3. a few 4. much

15. She always wants money.

1. a few 2. too many 3. so much 4. another

16. How have you spent on this problem?

1. many times 2. much time 3. far 4. soon

17. I can't come and see you because I haven't got time.

1. much 2. many 3. a few 4. some

18. I saw lovely animals in the zoo yesterday.

1. much 2. a lot of 3. any 4. a

19. In the construction of the building sand was mixed with cement to make concrete.

1. several 2. a number of 3. so many 4. a large amount of

20. When we run out of bread, we use flour to make bread. But now we have flour left.

1. very much 2. several 3. hardly any 4. too much

21. Several fish dying because of the pollution in the water.

1. is 2. are 3. have 4. to be

22. He made noise about the poor food in the restaurant and decided not to eat anything there again.

1. many 2. a few 3. a large number of 4. a lot of

23. Did you hear about the crash? There..... a lot of news about it on TV last week.

1. were 2. is 3. had 4. was

24. We haven't been able to make a decision on this matter because we have very..... information.

1. little 2. few 3. many 4. much

25.....effort is required to master a foreign language.

1. A great many 2. A large number of
3. A great deal 4. A large amount of

26. She would like to ask youquestions. She needsmore information.
 1. a few / a little 2. more / a few 3. a few / a few 4. a little/ much
27. The lecture he gave was highly complicated, with the result thatpeople were capable of following it.
 1. lesser 2. a few 3. few 4. more
28. of the information he gave could have been found in an dictionary.
 1. a few 2. many 3. few 4. much
29. There will be work to do after PCs have been put into the bank systems.
 1. less 2. many 3. too many 4. very few
30. A people typically agree that life is always sweet.
 1. large amount of 2. great quantity of
 3. larger number of 4. lot
31. A small amount of poison..... found in the coffee cup I used last week.
 1. is 2. are 3. was 4. were
32. The price of meat has really gone up. They now give you for your money.
 1. so few 2. so much 3. much less 4. fewer

تست های صفات کمیت

۱. friends قابل شمارش است. ۴
۲. money غیرقابل شمارش است. ۳
۳. rain غیر قابل شمارش است. ۲
۴. ۱
۵. time در این جمله به معنی وقت و زمان و غیر قابل شمارش است. ۱
۶. snow غیر قابل شمارش است. ۴
۷. times در این جمله به معنی بار و دفعه، و قابل شمارش است. ۳
۸. bread غیر قابل شمارش است و some با اسم قابل شمارش و هم غیر قابل شمارش می آید. ۴
۹. water غیر قابل شمارش است. ۱
۱۰. wild animal قابل شمارش است. ۴
۱۱. رجوع شود به تست ۷ ۱
۱۲. رجوع شود به تست ۵ ۲
۱۳. رجوع شود به تست ۹ ۱
۱۴. question قابل شمارش است ۳
۱۵. رجوع شود به تست ۳ ۳
۱۶. رجوع شود به تست ۵ ۲
۱۷. رجوع شود به تست ۵ ۱
۱۸. رجوع شود به تست ۱۰ ۲

۱۹. ۴، sand به معنی ماسه و غیر قابل شمارش است.
۲۰. ۳، بخاطر مفهوم منفی جمله
۲۱. ۲، چون fish در این جمله جمع است.
۲۲. ۴، noise غیر قابل شمارش است.
۲۳. ۴، news غیر قابل شمارش است.
۲۴. ۱، information غیر قابل شمارش است و اسامی غیر قابل شمارش با فعل مفرد می آیند زمان جمله گذشته است.
۲۵. ۴، effort غیر قابل شمارش است.
۲۶. ۱، question قابل شمارش و information غیر قابل شمارش است.
۲۷. ۳، people قابل شمارش و به خاطر مفهوم منفی، few به کار می رود.
۲۸. ۴، رجوع شود به تست ۲۴
۲۹. ۱، Work غیر قابل شمارش است.
۳۰. ۳، رجوع شود به تست ۲۷
۳۱. ۳، چون poison غیر قابل شمارش است و amount نیز آمده است.
۳۲. ۳، چون meat غیر قابل شمارش است و همانطور که گفته شد much و far برای تشدید یک صفت می توانند قبل از صفت تفضیلی بیایند.

Tests: Peterson's Success

1. Early carpenters, having.....nails, had to use wooden pegs to secure their constructions.

- (A) no
(B) not
(C) without
(D) neither

2. Old Faithful is the most famous but.....the most powerful geyser in Yellowstone National Park.

- (A) none of
(B) no
(C) nothing
(D) not

3. Joseph Priestly, the discoverer of oxygen, had little or not interest in science

C

until he met Benjamin Franklin in Paris.

D

4. Mobile homes were.....counted as permanent houses until the 1960 census.

- (A) not
(B) nor
(C) no
(D) none

5. Most solo musicians play.....sheet music in front of them.

- (A) without
(B) not having
(C) lacking
(D) and no

6. Desertification is the creation of deserts where.....had existed before.

- (A) never
(B) no one
(C) none
(D) not one

7. A peanut is not actually a nut but a legume alike peas and beans.

D

8. Glass snakes are actually legless lizards,.....snakes.

- (A) no
(B) not
(C) nor
(D) none

9. Twenty-four carat gold is no one hundred percent gold because pure gold is too

D

soft to be used in jewelry.

10. There is.....truth to the old expression "lightning never strikes the same place twice."

- (A) without
- (B) none
- (C) no
- (D) not

11.....single person can be said to have invented the automobile.

- (A) There was not a
- (B) Nor a
- (C) Not one of
- (D) No

12. A serious study of physics is impossible.....some knowledge of mathematics.

- (A) not with
- (B) no
- (C) not having
- (D) without

- 1. no
- 2. not
- 3. no
- 4. not
- 5. without
- 6. none
- 7. like
- 8. not
- 9. not
- 10. no
- 11. no
- 12. without

1.6 Difference words:

Other, the other, another, both

Other + اسم ق ش ج

Other: (ADDITIONAL)

1. additional to the item or person already mentioned:

---The product has many other time-saving features.

---There is no other work available at the moment.

2. used at the end of a list to show that there are more things, without being exact about what they are:

---Apples and other fruits

---The plan has been opposed by schools, businesses and other local organizations.

---These two books will be especially useful for editors, journalists and other professional users of the language.

---He likes travelling abroad and learning about other people's customs and traditions.

Others: pron.

1. additional ones:

---I only know about this book, but there might be others. (= other books).

2. people in general, not including yourself:

---You shouldn't expect others to do your work for you.

---Some people prefer a vegetarian diet, while others prefer a meat-based diet.

The other + اسم ق ش ج

➔ **The rest**

---She's much brighter than all the other children in her class.

---I chose this coat in the end because the other ones were all too expensive.

The others: pron.

---After her departure, the others resumed the discussion.

---She gave me one book last week and promised to bring the others on Wednesday.

The other + اسم ق ش مفرد

➔ the second of two things or people, or the item or person that is left in a group or set of things:

---I've found one earring - do you know where the other one is?

---Hold the racquet in one hand and the ball in the other.

---One man was arrested, but the other one got away.



(با noun و than) جز، به جز، به غیر از، مگر

---You won't be able to sell it other than by reducing the price.

نمی توانی آن را بفروشی مگر با کم کردن قیمت.

---All parts of the house other than the windows were in good condition.

همه ی بخش های خانه به جز پنجره ها در وضع خوبی بودند.

---He had no other clothes than those he was wearing.

لباسی به غیر از آن چه بر تن کرده بود نداشت.



---The other day (or night)

---I saw Jack the other day.

Another + اسم ق ش مفرد

Another:

---Do you want to exchange this toaster for another (one) or do you want your money back?

---The room's too small. Let's see if they've got another one.

---I don't like this room. I'm going to ask for another.

---Another change that Sue made was to install central heating.

---In another place

در جايي ديگر

---At another time

در وقتي ديگر

---A person of another race

شخصي از نژاد ديگر

---Wait another week

يك هفته ديگر صبر كنيد.

---I don't want this book. Please give me another.

(another = any other book - not specific)

---I don't want this book. Please give me the other.

(the other = the other book, specific)

---One movie starts at five, another movie starts at seven, and the other
adj. adj. (indefinite) adj.(definite)
movie starts at nine.

---One of my roommates studies engineering, another studies business, and the other studies computer science.

---Some houses are for rent, other houses are for sale, and the other houses are empty.

Both + اسم ق ش ج

Both: adj.

One and the other; two together:

---Both my parents are teachers.

---They have two grown children, both of whom live abroad.

---The problem with both of these proposals is that they are hopelessly impractical.

---I think it's important to listen to both sides of the argument.

---Improved child-care facilities would benefit both sexes, not just women.

Both: pron.

The one as well as the other:

---Both of us were going to the party.

---I knew them both. (or I knew both of them)

Both: conj.

Alike; equally:

---He is both ready and willing.

→→→TOEFL/IELTS

Indefinite pronouns such as anybody, somebody, anyone, everyone, nobody, each, either, neither, and no one require singular verb forms.

Tests:

1. There is not in this group who likes to go to the meeting.
1. anyone 2. someone 3. no one 4. none
2. Nobody when the process of glass-making invented.
1. know 2. knows 3. didn't know 4. doesn't know
3. "Is she going to stay at home this weekend?"
"No, I am sure she will go"
1. anywhere 2. everywhere 3. somewhere 4. nowhere
4. They didn't go last week. They preferred to stay at home and rest.
1. anywhere 2. somewhere 3. everywhere 4. nowhere
5. This morning I bought because the supermarket was very crowded.
1. anything 2. everything 3. nothing 4. something
6. The accident looked serious, but fortunately was injured.
1. anyone 2. everyone 3. someone 4. no one
7. Everybody is worried about the high pollution in big cities, but they are doing about it.
1. anything 2. everything 3. nothing 4. something
8. Tessie didn't have money left after her vacation.
1. some 2. any 3. no 4. none

9. I met two strangers on the way to work. One of them greeted me and didn't.

1. other 2. another 3. the other 4. another one

10. A: "Why can't you take me to school in the car today?"

B: "Because I have..... time."

1. no 2. not 3. any 4. never

11. Mary hasn't got flowers and she is crying.

1. a 2. any 3. no 4. some

12. I can't give you any because there's left.

1. none 2. any 3. no 4. not

13. There any students absent today.

1. is 2. isn't 3. are 4. aren't

14. I never have trouble with my car.

1. no 2. not 3. any 4. none

15. A: "How many chairs are there in the dining room?"

B: "There are chairs in it."

1. no 2. none 3. any 4. much

16. "Have you read these two books?"

"I have read one of them , and I am going to read"

1. the others one 2. another 3. the other one 4. other

17. I am too thirsty. I wish I could drink glass of water.

1. the another 2. another 3. others 4. the others

18. The weather in north is warm and humid.

1. both 2. either 3. neither 4. no

19. "Do you like to have cheese or butter for breakfast?"

"..... is good. I am very hungry."

1. both of them 2. none of them 3. either of them 4. neither of them

20. Our class starts at eight, another starts at ten, and starts at two.

1. another 2. the other 3. other 4. the another

21. One of my friends studies biochemistry, studies science.

1. others 2. other 3. the another 4. the other

22. There is not in this group who likes to go to the meeting.

1. anyone 2. someone 3. no one 4. none

23. There is some ink in my bottle, but there's in yours.

1. no any 2. any 3. none 4. not one

24. My friend has completely run out of money. He can't buy

1. anything 2. everything 3. nothing 4. something

25. He couldn't answer the questions I asked.

1. none of 2. nor of 3. either of 4. neither of

26. "Are there any apples on the tree?" "No, there are"

1. no 2. none 3. no one 4. any

27. A: "Where did you go for your holiday?" B: "....., I stayed at home."

1. each where 2. nowhere 3. somewhere 4. everywhere

28. Does mind if I open the window?

1. anybody 2. somebody 3. nobody 4. everybody

29. We must make our own beds, and helps us with them.

1. anybody 2. everybody 3. nobody 4. somebody

30. Harold and Emily compete with and they are going to study hard.

1. either one 2. each one 3. each other 4. one other

31. I have two close friends. of them is married.

1. any 2. one 3. both 4. no

32. I've never met who could speak Persian.

1. anybody 2. some 3. man 4. nobody

33. Green plants breathe in oxygen. But they do something too.

1. else 2. others 3. other 4. another

34. Two dogs were fighting over a bone..... was able to eat it because a very fierce and strong dog came and took it.

1. each 2. either 3. some 4. neither

35. The village house has had comfortable furniture in it, and many of the windows have been broken as well.

1. no 2. many 3. just a few 4. not many

36. Among many significant developments overseas last year an agreement permitting UK and Taiwan companies to manufacture computers in the Netherlands.

1. is

2. are

3. was

4. were

37. Which sentence is correct?

1. Mary, accompanied by her, were very well received at the show.
2. Several pets, two dogs and a cat, needs to be taken care of while we travel.
3. His knowledge of languages and international relations helps him in his work.
4. Everybody like to take part in the concert.

تست ضمائر مبهم

۱. ۱، چون جمله منفی می باشد any و مشتقاتش در جملات منفی و سئوالی بکار می روند.
۲. ۲، nobody خود مفهوم جمله را منفی می کند و احتیاج به فعل کمکی منفی نیست پس گزینه های ۴ و ۳ غلط است و همچنین چون سوم شخص مفرد در نظر گرفته می شود (مطابقت فعل با فاعل را مطالعه کنید) گزینه ۱ هم به خاطر نداشتن s سوم شخص نادرست است.
۳. ۳
۴. ۱، رجوع شود به تست ۱
۵. ۳، چون مفهوم جمله منفی است.
۶. ۴، no و مشتقاتش در جملات به ظاهر مثبت به کار می روند ولی بار معنایی جمله منفی است.
۷. ۳
۸. ۲، رجوع شود به تست ۱
۹. ۳، در جمله دوم به خاطر معرفه بودن به the نیاز است.
۱۰. ۱، رجوع شود به تست ۶
۱۱. ۲، رجوع شود به تست ۱
۱۲. ۱، در اینجا none ضمیر است.
۱۳. ۴، رجوع شود به تست ۱
۱۴. ۳، رجوع شود به تست ۱
۱۵. ۱، رجوع شود به تست ۶
۱۶. ۳، رجوع شود به تست ۹
۱۷. ۲، another قبل از اسم مفرد می آید.
۱۸. ۱
۱۹. ۳، either of قبل از اسامی جمع با فعل مفرد می آید.
۲۰. ۲، رجوع شود به تست ۹
۲۱. ۴، رجوع شود به تست ۹
۲۲. ۱، رجوع شود به تست ۱
۲۳. ۳، در این جمله none ضمیر است و به جای no ink قرار گرفته است.
۲۴. ۱، رجوع شود به تست ۱
۲۵. ۳، همه گزینه ها منفی هستند و در جمله منفی بکار نمی روند.
۲۶. ۲، رجوع شود به تست ۲۳
۲۷. ۲، بخاطر مفهوم منفی جمله
۲۸. ۱، رجوع شود به تست ۱

۲۹. ۳، رجوع شود به تست ۶
۳۰. ۳، با توجه به معنی جمله
۳۱. ۲
۳۲. ۱، رجوع شود به تست ۱
۳۳. ۱، else به معنی دیگر، دیگری
۳۴. ۴، neither در جملات مثبت به کار می رود .
۳۵. ۱
۳۶. ۳، به خاطر among (مطابقت فعل و فاعل)
۳۷. ۳، مطابقت فعل و فاعل

1.7 Numbers:

1. Cardinal = 1, 2, 3

---Ten dollars =

ده دلار

---Room 5 =

اتاق شماره 5

→→ Do not use the before cardinal numbers.

---The answer **to** this question is in line fifteen on page four.

Singular noun+ Cardinal numbers

---Chapter six

---Book one of the series is about verbs.

---Pick up your boarding passes at gate five.

2. Ordinal= 1st, 2nd, 3rd...

The+ Ordinal numbers+ singular noun

---The sixth chapter

---The first book of the series is about verbs.

But → ---A third of his composition has been corrected.

---A third of their compositions have been corrected.

---Ninety percent of the students in our school are **pleased with** the instruction.

Use **percent** only with a number (30 percent, 9 percent, etc). If you mean 'an amount expressed as part of a total' use **percentage**:

---A high percentage (NOT ~~percent~~) of the population was illiterate.

---The large percentage of the students in our school is pleased with the instruction.

Note: When preceded by **the**, *percentage* takes a singular verb:

---The *percentage of unskilled workers* is small.

When preceded by *a*, it takes either a singular or plural verb, depending on the number of the

noun in the prepositional phrase that follows:

---A small percentage of the workers are unskilled.

---A large percentage of the crop has spoiled.

---Five hundred miles is a long distance to drive in a day.

TOEFL:

...+ on + the + ordinal numbers + of + month

---Valentine's day is on the fourteenth of February.

...+ on + month + ordinal number

---Valentine's day is on February fourteenth.

→→→ Note 6: A number of students are in the campus.

M1 N

The number of students is not clear yet.

M1 N

NP of NP of NP of NP verb

HN

---The number of slimming products on the market is beginning to reflect this trend.

---The handle of the door is broken.

M1 HN

---The door handle is broken.

M3 HN

---The number of buses on our roads has increased each year.

Correct the mistake below.

✗---The number of woman studying science increased dramatically last year.

---The number of.....dramatically last year.

Choose the correct answer:

---The number of *men / man* studying science has decreased.

Note: Numbers

➔➔ Remember to **hyphenate** all **compound numbers** between **twenty-one** and **ninety-nine** when they are written as words.

➔➔ Round numbers over one hundred, like two thousand, five million, and so on, are also usually written in words.

➔➔ Write dates (21 October 2001) and sums of money (£10.50) and specific measurements (10.5 cm) in figures.

➔➔ Time can be written in words or figures (three o'clock/3 o'clock) but 24-hour clock times are always written in figures (08.00).

Centuries can be written in **words** or **figures** (the 18th century/the eighteenth century).

How do I write large numbers?

Tick the correct sentence in each pair.

- a. The government spent ten millions dollars on education last year.
- b. The government spent ten million dollars on education last year.

- a. There were thousands of people at the football match.
- b. There were a thousand of people at the football match.

➔

200,000 = two hundred thousand (not two hundred thousands)

10,000,000 = ten million (not ten millions)

---There must have been at least **three thousand** students at the protest.

---If I won a million dollars, I would probably take a year off and travel around the world.

---The president promised to increase the health budget **by one million dollars**.

➔

---There must have been **thousands of** students at the protest.

➔

---More than two million people attended last year.

but:

2,001,967 people attended last year.



---Half a (million);

---A/one third of a (million);

---Three quarters of a (million);

---One and a quarter (million);

---One and three quarter (million):

---According to the chart, in 2004 over half a million Ukrainians went to the cinema.

Underline the correct number in the sentences below.

The skeleton had remained hidden for a thousands / thousands of years.

The chart shows that three hundreds / three hundred whales were seen here in 1990.

Three and a half billion / three and a half of a billion will watch the ceremony.

I pay six hundred dollars / six hundred dollar rent each month.

Real estate in my city is very expensive; a small house can cost three quarter of a million / three quarters of a million dollars.

A million of / Millions of dollars are spent on space exploration each year.

By 2005, more than six hundred / six hundreds of children were enrolled in the school.

The company has sold one and a half billions / one and a half billion computers so far.

Match each amount (1-5) with its correct written equivalent (a-i). You'll need to read the words carefully.

- | | | |
|---|-------------|---|
| 1 | \$305,000 | a thrity-five dollars |
| | | b three and a half million dollars |
| 2 | \$35 | c three hundreds and five dollar |
| | | d thirty five thousands dollars |
| 3 | \$35,000 | e three millions and five hundred thousands dollars |
| | | f thirty-five dollars |
| 4 | \$3,500,000 | g three hundred and five thousand dollars |
| | | h thirty-five thousand dollars |
| 5 | \$305 | i three hundred and five dollars |

1.8 Question words

Which, what, whose:

Which: adj.

Which one of (a certain number or group mentioned or implied)?

---Which book do you want?

What: adj.

1. (Used interrogatively before nouns):

---What clothes shall I pack?

---What kind of rice **is** served in that restaurant?

---What kinds of rice **are** served in that restaurant?

2. Whatever:

---Take what supplies you need.

تجهیزات، ملزومات، لوازم، ضروریات

TPO 26 R 28 1st p

Whose:

---Whose bag is this?

---I don't care whose fault it is.

1.9 Defining words

Which, whose

Which: Whichever; any that:

---Go which way you please, you'll end up here.

Whose:

---A woman whose father has died

زنی که پدرش مرده است

---Farmers whose land is flooded

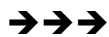
کشاورزانی که زمین های آنها را سیل گرفته است

---Dogs whose tails are cut

سگ هایی که دم آنها را بریده اند

→→→ The following words are pre-determiners. They go before determiners, such as articles:

Such a (n), what, half, rather, quite



What:

Predeterminer, determiner

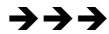
Used to introduce your opinion

---"She can't come." "What (= I think it is) a shame/pity."

---What a lovely view!

---What strange clothes he was wearing.

---What nonsense/rubbish!



Rather: predeterminer = very; to a large degree

---He's a rather nice man.

---He's rather a nice man.

Quite:

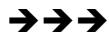
---He's quite pleasant-looking but he's not what you'd call handsome.

1- واقعا، به درستي، بي گمان، به راستي

---He is quite a gentleman.

واقعا جوانمرد است.

---Quite a sudden change...



Quite a few: many

---Quite a few towns are now banning cars from their shopping centres.

---His encouragement and interest inspired quite a few people to take up skiing.

Quite a bit of: a great deal/amount of

---It requires quite a bit of work and research.

---My family has moved around quite a bit since then.

Quite a lot of:

---With a penny, you could buy quite a lot of candy in those days.

---My job involves quite a lot of travel.

---He's got quite a lot of friends.

→→→→As/how/so/too/this/that+ adjective+ a/an+ noun

---How good a pianist he is.

---It was so warm a day that I could hardly work.

---She is too polite a person to refuse.

---I couldn't afford that big a car.

---It is too long an essay.

---I have as good a voice as you.

Tests:

1. Family rifts rarely involve the transgressions of just one person. In most disputes, ... the participants share degree of blame.
 - a. every of / a little
 - b. all / some
 - c. each / plenty of
 - d. whole / enough
 - e. some of / too many
2. In the office, there was..... noise that I couldn't focus on my work.
 - a. very much
 - b. enough
 - c. so many
 - d. so much
 - e. too much
3. He made noise about the poor food in the restaurant and decided not to eat anything there again.
 - a. too many
 - b. a little
 - c. enough
 - d. a lot of
 - e. so many
4. There is some meat in the refrigerator. Let's consume it because it has been there for..... a long time.
 - a. very
 - b. too
 - c. much

- d. quite
 - e. enough
5. The two dogs were fighting over a bone.was able to eat it because a very fierce and strong dog came and took it.
- a. Each
 - b. Either
 - c. Some
 - d. Neither
 - e. Enough
6. In the construction of the building sand was mixed with cement to make concrete.
- a. several
 - b. a number of
 - c. such many
 - d. so many
 - e. a large quantity of
7. Sand has been used in large quantities in the building, so I won't be surprised if it collapses after..... earth tremors.
- a. every
 - b. too much
 - c. very much
 - d. some
 - e. each
8. When we run out of bread, we use flour to make bread. But now we have flour left.
- a. very much
 - b. several
 - c. hardly any
 - d. too much
 - e. enough
9. After standing in a queue for more than two hours, I had patience left.
- a. enough
 - b. any
 - c. no
 - d. several
 - e. too much
10. As we were making innovations in our shop, we had to keep guard thenight.
- a. all
 - b. half
 - c. each
 - d. very
 - e. whole

11. Instead of meeting friends for a meal, she arranges to walk or go bike riding with them. There's not enough time in her day for a social life and exercise. This is a nice way to have
- a. neither
 - b. each
 - c. both
 - d. either
 - e. too
12. It is important to understand how the kidneys function. The two bean-shaped organs,..... about the size of a fist, house an elaborate filtering system that processes about 200 quarts of blood - the equivalent of 500 cans of soda - daily.
- a. every
 - b. each
 - c. some
 - d. neither
 - e. none
13. Of their three daughters, I find Jane the beautiful.
- a. very much
 - b. much more
 - c. enough
 - d. too much
 - e. most
14. My aunt gave birth to healthy twins last night..... is so sweet.
- a. Both
 - b. Each
 - c. All
 - d. Whole
 - e. Either
15. You can try of these two dishes; they are..... delicious.
- a. one / either
 - b. neither / all
 - c. both / all
 - d. both / either
 - e. either / both
16. When I decide to take rest on a weekend day, my twins become a great hindrance.of them insists on going to the zoo with me.
- a. either
 - b. both
 - c. all
 - d. neither

e. every

17. of the complaints were taken into account, but not..... of them.

- a. Several / all
- b. Plenty / the whole
- c. Every / some
- d. Most / a majority
- e. Some / a number

18. Nowadays, we havethings to do than we used to.

- a. so many
- b. several
- c. too many
- d. a lot more
- e. far many

19. I tried the two alternatives you told me. Unfortunately, of them worked.

- a. both
- b. all
- c. either
- d. some
- e. neither

Tests:

1- I tried the two. My brother didn't let me use..... that perfume because there was only in the bottle.

- A) some of / a few
- B) many of / quite little
- C) much of / a little
- D) enough of / several
- E) most of / many more

2- We are in need of..... money since..... the machinery in our factory has been out of date.

- A) Some / several
- B) enough / so much
- C) a good deal of / a lot of
- D) too much / each of
- E) a number of / plenty of

3- Whenever it rains cats and dogs in this area, the houses on sides of the river are..... flooded.

- A) each / each
- B) all / both
- C) either / several
- D) several / both

- E) both / all
- 4- An old woman asked me forbread but I couldn't give herbecause my son had consumed all of it.
A) some / any
B) several / no
C) a little / a few
D) plenty of / so many
E) a bit of / so much
- 5- of the cotton in Turkey is grown in Adana. In other words, cotton fields are found in Adana.
A) Every / every
B) Much / some
C) Some / either
D) Most / most
E) So many / too many
- 6- We are all unanimous that..... racial discrimination is based on ignorance.
A) quite
B) enough
C) some
D) little
E) most
- 7- It's obvious that the fight between countries will not come to an end. is willing to negotiate a cease-fire.
A) both / Neither
B) every / Each
C) all / Every
D) whole / Little
E) several / Either
- 8- countries had been fighting for six years until..... of them decided to negotiate a cease-fire.
A) All / many
B) Some / so much
C) Both / either
D) A lot of / neither
E) So many / too many
- 9- of the teachers we have interviewed so far that our educational system needs to be changed wholly.
A) All / thinks
B) Too much / think
C) Some / thinks

- D) Each / thinks
- E) Most / thinks

10- In the last six years,.....major studies have consistently associated high intakes of vitamin E with reduced risk of heart disease.

- A) little more
- B) a great deal of
- C) so much
- D) too much
- E) a number of

11- I learned about teaching from my experiences in the English classroom.

- A) every
- B) too many
- C) a number of
- D) a great deal
- E) plenty of

12- I think there is that he does not deserve. He is of the best-tempered man that ever existed.

- A) something / each
- B) anything / none
- C) nothing / one
- D) everything / some
- E) a little / most

13- Nationalism, theology, the exquisite glories of war, business, and racism haveat one time or another functioned as the primary yardstick for human belief system.

- A) every
- B) enough
- C) little
- D) either
- E) each

14- The new couple of compensation systems are starting to link the broker's pay to the client's success. can be successful by jumping in and out of the stock market in panic or euphoria.

- A) Each
- B) All
- C) Whole
- D) Enough
- E) Many

15- It's a **curious** fact that in ages and all societies, numbers of people are attracted to the gentle, not the strong, to the sufferers and not the successful.

- A) every / great

- B) several / some
- C) all / large
- D) any / very much
- E) enough / plenty

16- By 1948 it was clear the relationships of the two sides were deteriorating, and of them was very happy.

- A) neither
- B) enough
- C) each
- D) both
- E) all

17- Jessie arranges to have the kids tested. of them undergoes an echo-cardiogram, which can reveal only symptoms, not the actual disease. The results calm her. of the kids show symptoms.

- A) All / Some
- B) So many / Most
- C) Most / No one
- D) Each / None
- E) Some / Many

Tenses:

Simple Present Tense

How do we make the Simple Present Tense?

subject	+	auxiliary verb	+	main verb
		do		base

➔ There are three important exceptions:

1. For **positive** sentences, we **do not normally use the auxiliary**.
2. For the 3rd person singular (he, she, it), we add **s** to the main verb or **es** to the auxiliary.
3. For the verb *to be*, we do not use an auxiliary, even for questions and negatives.

Look at these examples with the main verb like:

	subject	auxiliary verb		main verb	
+	I, you, we, they			like	coffee.
	He, she, it			likes	coffee.
-	I, you, we, they	do	not	like	coffee.
	He, she, it	does	not	like	coffee.
?	Do	I, you, we, they		like	coffee?
	Does	he, she, it		like	coffee?

Look at these examples with the main verb be. Notice that there is no auxiliary:

	subject	main verb		
+	I	am		French.
	You, we, they	are		French.
	He, she, it	is		French.
-	I	am	not	old.
	You, we, they	are	not	old.

	He, she, it	is	not	old.
?	Am	I		late?
	Are	you, we, they		late?
	Is	he, she, it		late?

How do we use the Simple Present Tense?

We use the simple present tense when:

1. **The action is general.**
2. **The action happens all the time, or habitually, in the past, present, and future.**
3. **The action is not happening only now.**
4. **The statement is always true.**

<u>---John drives a taxi.</u>		
<u>past</u>	<u>present</u>	<u>future</u>
It is John's job to drive a taxi. He does it every day (past, present, and future).		

Look at these examples:

---I live in New York.

---John drives a taxi.

---He does not drive a bus.


---Nurses look after patients in hospitals.


---I usually go away at weekends.

---The earth goes round the sun.

---The cafe opens At 7.30 in the morning.

Note that with the verb to be, we can also use the simple present tense for situations that are not general. We can use the simple present tense to talk about now. Look at these examples of the verb "to be" in the simple present tense - some of them are general, some of them are now:

--- <u>Am</u> I right? ---Tara <u>is</u> not at home. ---You <u>are</u> happy.		
past	present	future
<div style="text-align: center;">  </div>		
The situation is now.		

---I <u>am not</u> fat. ---Why <u>are</u> you so beautiful? ---Ram <u>is</u> tall.		
past	present	future
<div style="text-align: center;">  </div>		
The situation is general. Past, present and future.		

This page shows the use of the simple present tense to talk about general events. However, note that there are some other uses for the simple present tense, for example in conditional or if sentences, or to talk about the future. You will learn about those later.

Complete the sentences using the following verbs:

speak(s) take(s) cause(s) connect(s) drink(s) Live(s) open(s)

1. Tanya.....German very well.
2. I don't often.....coffee.
3. The swimming pool.....at 7.30 every morning.
4. Bad driving.....many accidents.
5. My parents.....in a very small flat.
6. The Olympic Games.....place every four years.
7. The Panama Canal.....the Atlantic and Pacific oceans.

Answers:

1. speaks
2. drink
3. opens
4. causes
5. live
6. take
7. connects

Present Continuous Tense

How do we make the Present Continuous Tense?

The structure of the present continuous tense is:

subject	+	auxiliary verb	+	main verb
		be		base + ing

Look at these examples:

	subject	auxiliary verb		main verb	
+	I	am		speaking	to you.
+	You	are		reading	this.
-	She	is	not	staying	in London.
-	We	are	not	playing	football.
?	Is	he		watching	TV?
?	Are	they		waiting	for John?

How do we use the Present Continuous Tense?

We use the present continuous tense to talk about:




1. **actions** happening now
2. **actions** in the future

1. a for action happening exactly now

---I <u>am eating</u> my lunch.		
past	present	future

	The action is happening now.	
--	-------------------------------------	--

Look at these examples. Right now you are looking at this screen and at the same time...

		
---The pages <u>are turning</u> .	---The candle <u>is burning</u> .	---The numbers <u>are spinning</u> .

1. b for action happening around now

The action may not be happening exactly now, but it is happening just before and just after now, and it is not permanent or habitual.

---John <u>is going out</u> with Mary. (These days)		
past	present	future
	The action is happening around now.	

Look at these examples:

---Muriel is learning to drive. (These days)

---I am living with my sister until I find an apartment. (These days)

2. Present continuous tense for the future

We can also use the present continuous tense to talk about the future - if we add a future word!! We must add (or understand from the context) a future word. "Future words" include, for example, tomorrow, next year, in June, at Christmas etc. We only use the present continuous tense to talk about the future when we have planned to do something before we speak. We have already made a decision and a plan before speaking.

---I <u>am taking</u> my exam <u>next month</u> .		
past	present	future

	A firm plan or program exists now.	The action is in the future.

Look at these examples:

---We're eating in a restaurant tonight. We've already booked the table.

---They can play tennis with you tomorrow. They're not working.

---When are you starting your new job?

➔➔➔ Verbs NOT normally used in the continuous tenses:

The continuous tenses are chiefly used for deliberate actions. Some verbs are, therefore, not normally used in the continuous and have only one present tense, the simple present. These verbs can be grouped as follows:

A Verbs of the senses (involuntary actions): feel, hear, see, smell; also notice and observe (= notice), and feel, look, taste used as linking verbs.

B Verbs expressing feelings and emotions, e.g. admire (= respect), adore, appreciate (= value), care for (= like), desire, detest, dislike, fear, hate, like, loathe, love, mind (= care), respect, value, want, wish.

➔➔ But the continuous can be used with admire meaning 'look at with admiration', appreciate meaning 'increase in value', care for meaning 'look after', long for, mind meaning 'look after/concern oneself with', value meaning 'estimate the financial worth of', enjoy and sometimes like/love meaning 'enjoy', and hate meaning the opposite, though it is safer to use the simple tenses with like, love and hate:

---He's enjoying his holiday in the Arctic. He hates touristy places and he doesn't mind the cold.

---I'm minding my own business.

---How are you liking/Do you like your new job?

---I'm hating it/I hate it. I just don't like work, you see.

C Verbs of mental activity, e.g. agree, appreciate (= understand), assume, believe, expect (= think), feel (= think), feel sure/certain, forget, know, mean, perceive, realize, recall, recognize, recollect, remember, see (= understand), see through someone (= penetrate his attempt to deceive), suppose, think (= have an opinion), trust (= believe/have confidence in), understand. But the continuous can be used with appreciate meaning 'to increase in value'.

D Verbs of possession: belong, owe, own, possess, have:

---How much do I owe you?

E The auxiliaries, except be and have in certain uses.

F appear (= seem), concern, consist, contain, hold (= contain), keep (= continue), matter, seem, signify, sound (= seem/appear):

---It concerns us all.

---This box contains explosives.

But appear meaning 'to come before the public' can be used in the continuous.

Put the verb into the correct form. Sometimes you need the negative (I'm not doing etc.).

1. Please don't make so much noise. I.....(try) to work.
2. Let's go out now. It.....(rain) any more.
3. You can turn off the radio. I.....(listen) to it.
4. Kate phoned me last night. She's on holiday in France. She.....(have) a great time and doesn't want to come back.
5. I want to lose weight, so this week I.....(eat) lunch.
6. Andrew has just started evening classes. He.....(learn) German.
7. Paul and Sally have had an argument. They.....(speak) to each other.
8. I.....(get) tired. I need a rest.
9. Tim.....(work) this week. He's on holiday.

Answers:

1. am trying
2. is not raining
3. am not listening
4. is having
5. am not eating
6. is learning
7. are not speaking
8. am getting
9. is not working

Present perfect:

How do we use the Present Perfect Tense?

This tense is called the present perfect tense. There is always a connection with the past and with the present. There are basically three uses for the present perfect tense:

1. Experience
2. Change
3. Continuing situation
4. An action that was completed in the very recent past (expressed by 'just')

1. Present perfect tense for experience

We often use the present perfect tense to talk about experience from the past. We are not interested in when you did something. We only want to know if you did it:

---I have seen ET.
---He has lived in Bangkok.
---Have you been there?
---We have never eaten caviar.

past	present	future
The action or state was in the past.	In my head, I have a memory now.	

Connection with past: the event was in the past.

Connection with present: in my head, now, I have a memory of the event; I know something about the event; I have experience of it.

2. Present perfect tense for change

We also use the present perfect tense to talk about a change or new information:

---I have bought a car.

past	present	future
-	+	

Last week I didn't have a car.	Now I have a car.	
---------------------------------------	--------------------------	--

---John <u>has broken</u> his leg.		
past	present	future
+	-	
Yesterday, John had a good leg.	Now, he has a bad leg.	

--- <u>Has</u> the price <u>gone up</u> ?		
past	present	future
+	-	
Was the price \$1.50 yesterday?	Is the price \$1.70 today?	

---The police <u>have arrested</u> the killer.		
past	present	future
-	+	
Yesterday, the killer was free.	Now, he is in prison.	

Connection with past: the past is the opposite of the present.

Connection with present: the present is the opposite of the past.

Americans do not use the present perfect tense so much as British speakers. Americans often use the past tense instead. An American might say "Did you have lunch?", where a British person would say "Have you had lunch?"

3. Present perfect tense for continuing situation

We often use the present perfect tense to talk about a continuing situation. This is a state that started in the past and continues in the present (and will probably continue

into the future). This is a state (not an action). We usually use for or since with this structure.

---I <u>have worked</u> here <u>since June</u> . ---He <u>has been</u> ill <u>for 2 days</u> . ---How long <u>have you known</u> Tara?		
past	present	future
The situation started in the past.	It continues up to now.	(It will probably continue into the future.)

Connection with past: the situation started in the past.

Connection with present: the situation continues in the present.

4. An action that was completed in the very recent past (expressed by 'just')


---I have just finished my work.

➔➔ **Adverbs used with this tense:** Since, for, just, yet, several times, many times, up to now, till now, until now, so far, already, ever.

For & Since with Present Perfect Tense

We often use for and since with the present perfect tense.

- We use **for** to talk about **a period of time**: 5 minutes, 2 weeks, 6 years.
- We use **since** to talk about **a point in past time**: 9 o'clock, 1st January, Monday.

for	since
<i>a period of time</i>	<i>a point in past time</i>
	x-----
20 minutes	6.15 pm
three days	Monday
6 months	January
4 years	1994

2 centuries	1800
a long time	I left school
ever	the beginning of time
etc.	etc.

Here are some examples:

---I have been here for 20 minutes.

---I have been here since 9 o'clock.

---John hasn't called for 6 months.

---John hasn't called since February.

---He has worked in New York for a long time.

---He has worked in New York since he left school.

---I have worked here for five years. She has lived here for twenty years.

---They have been married for six months.

---I have lived here since 1998.

---They have been married since June.

---We have been at this school since last year.

➡➡➡ **For** can be used with all tenses. **Since** is usually used with perfect tenses only.

PRESENT PERFECT + adverbs (ever, never, already, yet, still)

'Ever' and **'never'** are always placed before the past participle.

'Ever', sometime before now, is used:

a. in questions

---Have you ever been to Canada?

---Has she ever met someone famous?

b. in negative questions

---Haven't they ever been to Canada?

---Haven't you ever eaten Thai food?

c. and in negative statements using the pattern nothing.....ever, nobody.....ever e.g.

---Nobody has ever said that to me before.

---Nothing like that has ever happened to me.

d. 'Ever' is also used with 'The first time.... e.g.

---It's the first time I've ever eaten Thai food.

---This is the first time I've ever been to Canada.

'Never' = not ever. **Never** is used after have/has.

---I have never visited London. I've never been so sick.

Already: It can be placed before the main verb (past participle) or at the end of the sentence.

Already, sooner than expected, is used:

---I've already heard the story five times.

---Most people have already gone.

It is also used **in questions**:

---Have you already rung Mike?

---Has he arrived already?

Yet is used in **negative statements** and **questions** when we are expecting something to happen and goes at the end of the sentence.

---Have you bought a ticket yet?

---I haven't met her yet.

---Has your course started yet?

---They haven't arrived yet.

Still = continuing longer than expected. ***Still*** is stronger than yet and often expresses **surprise that a situation has continued for so long.**

---She isn't home yet. She's still at work.

---I still haven't found what I'm looking for.

---I'm still thinking about it.

➡➡ Present perfect or past simple?

Very Important: When we want to give or ask details about when, where, and who, we use the simple past.

Example:

---He saw 'Harry Potter' last week.

Use the present perfect when the time is not important.

Use the simple past when the time or place is important.

Present Perfect or Past Simple Test:

1. When _____ the school?

- a) have you joined
- b) did you joined
- c) did you join
- d) have you ever joined

2. _____ in England?

- a) Did you ever worked
- b) Have you ever worked
- c) Worked you
- d) Didn't you have worked

3. That's the best speech _____

- a) I never heard
- b) I didn't hear
- c) I used to hear
- d) I've ever heard

4. He's the most difficult housemate _____

- a) I never dealt with.
- b) I never had to deal with.
- c) I've ever had to deal with.
- d) I've never had to deal with.

5. _____ to him last week.

- a) I spoke
- b) I've already spoken
- c) I didn't spoke
- d) I speak

6. _____ a contract last year, and it is still valid.

- a) We have signed
- b) We signed
- c) We haven't signed
- d) We have sign

7. _____ from a business trip to France.

- a) I come back
- b) I came back
- c) I never came back
- d) I've just come back

8. Prices _____ in 1995 but then _____ in 1996.

- a) rises failed
- b) rose fell
- c) have risen have fallen
- d) rose have fallen

9. You _____ to a word _____

- a) listened I haven't said
- b) didn't listen I said
- c) listened saying
- d) haven't listened I say

10. I cannot believe that _____ the news.

- a) you haven't read
- b) you aren't reading
- c) you don't read
- d) you read not

Answers:

1. C
2. B
3. D
4. C
5. A
6. A
7. D
8. B
9. B
10. A

Present Perfect Continuous Tense:

How do we make the Present Perfect Continuous Tense?

The structure of the present perfect continuous tense is:

subject	+	auxiliary verb	+	auxiliary verb	+	main verb
		have has		been		base + ing

Here are some examples of the present perfect continuous tense:

	subject	auxiliary verb		auxiliary verb	main verb	
+	I	have		been	waiting	for one hour.
+	You	have		been	talking	too much.
-	It	has	not	been	raining.	
-	We	have	not	been	playing	football.
?	Have	you		been	seeing	her?
?	Have	they		been	doing	their homework?

Contractions

When we use the present perfect continuous tense in speaking, we often contract the subject and the first auxiliary. We also sometimes do this in informal writing.

I have been	I've been
You have been	You've been
He has been She has been It has been John has been The car has been	He's been She's been It's been John's been The car's been
We have been	We've been
They have been	They've been

Here are some examples:

---I've been reading.

---The car's been giving trouble.

---We've been playing tennis for two hours.

Adverbs used with this tense: lately, recently, since, for, how long

All + adverb of time

All this week

How do we use the Present Perfect Continuous Tense?

This tense is called the present perfect continuous tense. There is usually a connection with the present or now. There are basically two uses for the present perfect continuous tense:

1. An action that has just stopped or recently stopped

We use the present perfect continuous tense to talk about an action that started in the past and stopped recently. There is usually a result now.

---I'm tired because I've been running.

past	present	future
Recent action.	Result now.	

---I'm tired ^[now] because I've been running.

---Why is the grass wet ^[now]? Has it been raining?

---You don't understand ^[now] because you haven't been listening.

2. An action continuing up to now

We use the present perfect continuous tense to talk about an action that started in the past and is continuing now. This is often used with for or since.

---I <u>have been reading for 2 hours</u> .		
past	present	future
Action started in past.	Action is continuing now.	

---I have been reading for 2 hours. [I am still reading now.]

---We've been studying since 9 o'clock. [We're still studying now.]

---How long have you been learning English? [You are still learning now.]

---We have not been smoking. [And we are not smoking now.]

Present Perfect Simple or Continuous?

In some examples two answers may be possible but one is more natural than the other. This natural one is the correct answer.

1. I'm very hungry. I _____ all day.

- a) didn't eat
- b) haven't ate
- c) haven't eaten
- d) have been eating

2. Their new kitchen looks fantastic. They _____ completely _____ it.

- a) have been redecorating
- b) have redecorated
- c) already redecorated
- d) didn't redecorated

3. Our kitchen's a mess. We _____ any cleaning for weeks.

- a) didn't do
- b) haven't been doing
- c) have done
- d) haven't done

4. I think they are dating. They _____ each other a lot recently.

- a) had seen
- b) haven't been seeing
- c) have been seeing
- d) have seen

5. We've discovered this great café and we _____ there a lot.
- a) have been going
 - b) have gone
 - c) are going
 - d) have went
6. How's your Mum? I _____ her for ages.
- a) had seen
 - b) haven't seen
 - c) haven't been seeing
 - d) didn't see
7. You're covered in paint! What _____ you _____?
- a) have done
 - b) were doing
 - c) did do
 - d) have been doing
8. She's gone to the doctor's. She _____ too well lately.
- a) hasn't felt
 - b) hasn't been feeling
 - c) has felt
 - d) doesn't feel
9. Where have you been? I _____ for ages.
- a) have waited
 - b) waited
 - c) was waiting
 - d) have been waiting
10. I have to write an essay. I _____ about half of it so far.
- a) have written
 - b) have been writing
 - c) wrote
 - d) have to write

Simple past:

How do we make the Simple Past Tense?

To make the simple past tense, we use:

- past form only
or
- auxiliary did + base form

Here you can see examples of the past form and base form for irregular verbs and regular verbs:

	V1 base	V2 past	V3 past participle	
regular verb	work explode like	worked exploded liked	worked exploded liked	The past form for all regular verbs ends in -ed .
irregular verb	go see sing	went saw sang	gone seen sung	The past form for irregular verbs is variable. You need to learn it by heart.
			You do not need the past participle form to make the simple past tense. It is shown here for completeness only.	

The auxiliary verb did is not conjugated. It is the same for all persons (I did, you did, he did etc.). And the base form and past form do not change. Look at these examples with the main verbs go and work:

	subject	auxiliary verb		main verb	
+	I			went	to school.
	You			worked	very hard.

-	She	did	not	go	with me.
	We	did	not	work	yesterday.
?	Did	you		go	to London?
	Did	they		work	at home?

Exception! The verb to be is different. We conjugate the verb to be (I was, you were, he/she/it was, we were, they were); and we do not use an auxiliary for negative and question sentences. To make a question, we exchange the subject and verb. Look at these examples:

	Subject	main verb		
+	I, he/she/it	was		here.
	You, we, they	were		in London.
-	I, he/she/it	was	not	there.
	You, we, they	were	not	happy.
?	Was	I, he/she/it		right?
	Were	you, we, they		late?

Adverbs used with this tense: yesterday, the day before yesterday, ago

Last + adverbs of time: last morning, last night
last week, last Friday
last month, and
last year,

How do we use the Simple Past Tense?

We use the simple past tense to talk about an action or a situation - an event - in the past. The event can be short or long.

Here are some short events with the simple past tense:

---The car <u>exploded</u> at 9.30am <u>yesterday</u> . ---She <u>went</u> to the door. ---We <u>did not hear</u> the telephone. --- <u>Did</u> you <u>see</u> that car?		
Past	present	future
The action is in the past.		

Here are some long events with the simple past tense:

---I <u>lived</u> in Bangkok <u>for 10 years</u> . ---The Jurassic period <u>lasted about 62 million years</u> . ---We <u>did not sing at the concert</u> . --- <u>Did</u> you <u>watch</u> TV <u>last night</u> ?		
Past	present	future
The action is in the past.		

➔ Notice that it does not matter how long ago the event is: it can be a few minutes or seconds in the past, or millions of years in the past. Also, it does not matter how long the event is. It can be a few milliseconds (car explosion) or millions of years (Jurassic period).

➔ We use the simple past tense when:

- the event is in the past
- the event is completely finished
- we say (or understand) the time and/or place of the event

➔ In general, if we say the time or place of the event, we must use the simple past tense; we cannot use the present perfect.

Here are some more examples:

---I lived in that house when I was young.

---He didn't like the movie.

---What did you eat for dinner?

---John drove to London on Monday.

---Mary did not go to work yesterday.

---Did you play tennis last week?

---I was at work yesterday.

---We were not late (for the train).

---Were you angry?

➔ Note that when we tell a story, we usually use the simple past tense. We may use the past continuous tense to "set the scene", but we almost always use the simple past tense for the action. Look at this example of the beginning of a story:

"The wind was howling around the hotel and the rain was pouring down. It was cold. The door opened and James Bond entered. He took off his coat, which was very wet, and ordered a drink at the bar. He sat down in the corner of the lounge and quietly drank his..."

➔ This page shows the use of the simple past tense to talk about past events, but note that there are some other uses for the simple past tense, for example in conditional or if sentences.

Complete the sentences using the following verbs in the correct form:

buy catch cost fall hurt sell spend teach throw make

1. Mozart.....more than 600 pieces of music.
2. 'How did you learn to drive?' 'My father.....me.'
3. We couldn't afford to keep our car, so we.....it.
4. Dave.....down the stairs this morning and.....his leg.
5. Jim.....the ball to Sue, who.....it.
6. Ann.....a lot of money yesterday. She.....a dress which.....£100.

Answers:

1. made
2. taught
3. sold
4. fell.....hurt

5. threw.....caught
6. spent.....bought.....cost

Past continuous:

How do we make the Past Continuous Tense?

The structure of the past continuous tense is:

subject	+	auxiliary verb BE	+	main verb
		conjugated in simple past tense		present participle
		was were		base + ing

For negative sentences in the past continuous tense, we insert not between the auxiliary verb and main verb. For question sentences, we exchange the subject and auxiliary verb. Look at these example sentences with the past continuous tense:

	subject	auxiliary verb		main verb	
+	I	was		watching	TV.
+	You	were		working	hard.
-	He, she, it	was	not	helping	Mary.
-	We	were	not	joking.	
?	Were	you		being	silly?
?	Were	they		playing	football?

Adverbs used with this tense:

At this time + adverbs (past time)

At this time yesterday

At this time last week

At + time + adverbs (past time)

At 7 yesterday

At 8 last night

All + adverbs (past time)

All the last night

1. Simple past + while + past continuous

---She arrived *while* they were playing ping-pong.

2. Past continuous + when + Simple past

---The sun was shining *when* I got up.

3. When + Simple past + past continuous

---When you came, they were washing dishes.

4. While + past continuous + Simple past

---While they were eating lunch, the telephone rang.

Put the verb into the correct form, *past continuous* or *past simple*.

1. Jenny.....(wait) for me when I.....(arrive).
2. 'What.....(you / do) at this time yesterday?' 'I was asleep.'
3. '.....(you / go) out last night?' 'No, I was too tired.'
4. How fast.....(you / drive) when the accident happened?
5. Sam.....(take) a photograph of me while I.....(not/ look).
6. We were in a very difficult position. We.....(nor / know) what to do.
7. I haven't seen Alan for ages. When I last..... (see) him, he.....(try to) find a job.
8. I.....(walk) along the street when suddenly I.....(hear) footsteps behind me. Somebody.....(follow) me. I was scared and.....(start) to run.
9. When I was young, I.....(want) to be a pilot.
10. Last night, I.....(drop) a plate when I.....(do) the washing up. Fortunately, it.....(not / break).

Answers:

1. was waiting.....arrived
2. were you doing
3. Did you go out
4. were you driving
5. took.....was not looking
6. did not know
7. saw....was trying to....
8. was walking.....heardwas following.....started to
9. wanted
10. dropped.....was doing.....did not break.

Past perfect:

How do we make the Past Perfect Tense?

The structure of the past perfect tense is:

subject	+	auxiliary verb HAVE	+	main verb
		conjugated in simple past tense		past participle
		had		V3

For negative sentences in the past perfect tense, we insert not between the auxiliary verb and main verb. For question sentences, we exchange the subject and auxiliary verb. Look at these example sentences with the past perfect tense:

	subject	auxiliary verb		main verb	
+	I	had		finished	my work.
+	You	had		stopped	before me.
-	She	had	not	gone	to school.
-	We	had	not	left.	
?	Had	you		arrived?	
?	Had	they		eaten	dinner?

When speaking with the past perfect tense, we often contract the subject and auxiliary verb:

I had	I'd
you had	you'd
he had she had it had	he'd she'd it'd
we had	we'd
they had	they'd

→ The 'd contraction is also used for the auxiliary verb would. For example, we'd can mean:

- We had
or
- We would

But usually the main verb is in a different form, for example:

---We had arrived. (past participle)

---We would arrive. (base form)

It is always clear from the context.

How do we use the Past Perfect Tense?

The past perfect tense expresses action in the past before another action in the past. This is the past in the past. For example:

---The train left at 9 am. We arrived at 9.15 am. When we arrived, the train had left.

---The train <u>had left</u> when <u>we arrived</u> .		
past	present	future
Train leaves in the past at 9 am.		
We arrive in the past at 9.15 am.		

Look at some more examples:

---I wasn't hungry. I had just eaten.

---They were hungry. They had not eaten for five hours.

---I didn't know who he was. I had never seen him before.

---"Mary wasn't at home when I arrived."

---"Really? Where had she gone?"

You can sometimes think of the past perfect tense like the present perfect tense, but instead of the time being now the time is past.

past perfect tense				present perfect tense		
had					have	
done					done	
>					>	
past	now	future		past	now	future

For example, imagine that you arrive at the station at 9.15am. The stationmaster says to you:

---"You are too late. The train has left."

Later, you tell your friends:

---"We were too late. The train had left."

➔➔ We often use the past perfect tense in reported speech after verbs like said, told, asked, thought, wondered:

Look at these examples:

---He told us that the train had left.

---I thought I had met her before, but I was wrong.

---He explained that he had closed the window because of the rain.

---I wondered if I had been there before.

---I asked them why they had not finished.

Past Perfect Continuous Tense:

How do we make the Past Perfect Continuous Tense?

The structure of the past perfect continuous tense is:

subject	+	auxiliary verb HAVE	+	auxiliary verb BE	+	main verb
		conjugated in simple past tense		past participle		present participle
		had		been		base + ing

For negative sentences in the past perfect continuous tense, we insert not after the first auxiliary verb. For question sentences, we exchange the subject and first auxiliary verb.

Look at these example sentences with the past perfect continuous tense:

	subject	auxiliary verb		auxiliary verb	main verb	
+	I	had		been	working.	
+	You	had		been	playing	tennis.
-	It	had	not	been	working	well.
-	We	had	not	been	expecting	her.
?	Had	you		been	drinking?	
?	Had	they		been	waiting	long?

When speaking with the past perfect continuous tense, we often contract the subject and first auxiliary verb:


I had been	I'd been
you had been	you'd been
he had she had been it had been	he'd been she'd been it'd been
we had been	we'd been

they had been	they'd been
---------------	-------------

How do we use the Past Perfect Continuous Tense?

The past perfect continuous tense is like the past perfect tense, but it expresses longer actions in the past before another action in the past. For example:

---Ram started waiting at 9 am. I arrived at 11 am. When I arrived, Ram had been waiting for two hours.

---Ram <u>had been waiting</u> for two hours when <u>I arrived</u> .		
past	present	future
Ram starts waiting in past at 9 am.		
9 11		
		
I arrive in past at 11 am.		

Here are some more examples:

---John was very tired. He had been running.

---I could smell cigarettes. Somebody had been smoking.

---Suddenly, my car broke down. I was not surprised. It had not been running well for a long time.

---Had the pilot been drinking before the crash?

You can sometimes think of the past perfect continuous tense like the present perfect continuous tense, but instead of the time being now the time is past.

past perfect continuous tense				present perfect continuous tense		
had					have	
been					been	
doing					doing	
>>>>					>>>>	
past	now	future		past	now	future

For example, imagine that you meet Ram at 11am. Ram says to you:

---"I am angry. I have been waiting for two hours."

Later, you tell your friends:

---"Ram was angry. He had been waiting for two hours."

Tests:

1. Not again! This is the third time that I my keys since I home this morning.

- a) am losing/was leaving
- b) had lost/left
- c) lose/had left
- d) have lost/left
- e) will lose/have left

'This is + the first/second/third + time/book/exam + Pres Perfect' and 'Since + S. Past' help us as a clue to solve this question. Thus, D is the correct choice.

2. He of retiring until after he enough to afford a life abroad after retirement.

- a) hasn't thought/will save
- b) isn't thinking/has been saving
- c) won't think/is saving
- d) doesn't think/has saved
- e) didn't think/will have saved

For past tenses, we use 'Until + S. Past, Past Perfect' and for present and future; 'Until + S. Present/Present Perfect, (Present)/Future Tense' should be used. Tense conjunctives cannot be followed by a future tense in the subordinate clause, and if we test the 'until + tense sequence' pattern, we see that the correct answer is D.

3. For a year now, Mr. Harris charity balls to collect money for the homeless.

- a) had been organizing
- b) was organizing
- c) would be organizing
- d) organized
- e) has been organizing

'For + Time Expression + Now = Present Perfect Continuous. E is the correct choice.

4. By the time it mid-summer, I at this firm for about ten years.

- a) was/could have worked
- b) will be/will have worked

- c) has been/will be working
- d) would be/had worked
- e) is/will have worked

As regards the English grammar, 'by the time + Simple Past + Past Perfect tense' and 'by the time + Simple present + Future perfect' should be used. By requires a perfect tense.

5. When Bill called me I that we fishing soon.

- a) remembered/had gone
- b) was remembering/would be going
- c) remembered/ would go
- d) remember/will be going
- e) had remembered/will go

'When' is a conjunction and needs time sequence (past-past, present-present). 'When + simple past + simple past'. 'Called' is a verb in the past form and this means all the gap should be in the past. Soon doesn't change anything in terms of tense use. But it gives a future idea and due to past tense reference (called), 'would' is suitable.

Simple Future Tense:

The simple future tense is often called will, because we make the simple future tense with the modal auxiliary will.

How do we make the Simple Future Tense?

The structure of the simple future tense is:

subject	+	auxiliary verb WILL	+	main verb
		invariable		base
		will		V1

For negative sentences in the simple future tense, we insert not between the auxiliary verb and main verb. For question sentences, we exchange the subject and auxiliary verb. Look at these example sentences with the simple future tense:

	subject	auxiliary verb		main verb	
+	I	will		open	the door.
+	You	will		finish	before me.
-	She	will	not	be	at school tomorrow.
-	We	will	not	leave	yet.
?	Will	you		arrive	on time?
?	Will	they		want	dinner?

When we use the simple future tense in speaking, we often contract the subject and auxiliary verb:

I will	I'll
you will	you'll
he will she will it will	he'll she'll it'll

we will	we'll
they will	they'll

For negative sentences in the simple future tense, we contract with won't, like this:

I will not	I won't
you will not	you won't
he will not she will not it will not	he won't she won't it won't
we will not	we won't
they will not	they won't

Adverbs used with this tense:

Tomorrow, soon, the day after tomorrow

next morning, next month

Next + adverb of time

next night next week

How do we use the Simple Future Tense?

1. No Plan

We use the simple future tense when there is no plan or decision to do something before we speak. We make the decision spontaneously at the time of speaking. Look at these examples:

---Hold on. I'll get a pen.

---We will see what we can do to help you.

---Maybe we'll stay in and watch television tonight.

In these examples, we had no firm plan before speaking. The decision is made at the time of speaking.

We often use the simple future tense with the verb to think before it:

---I think I'll go to the gym tomorrow.

---I think I will have a holiday next year.

---I don't think I'll buy that car.

2. Prediction

We often use the simple future tense to make a prediction about the future. Again, there is no firm plan. We are saying what we think will happen. Here are some examples:

---It will rain tomorrow.

---People won't go to Jupiter before the 22nd century.

---Who do you think will get the job?

➔ When the main verb is be, we can use the simple future tense, even if we have a firm plan or decision before speaking.

Examples:

---I'll be in London tomorrow.

---I'm going shopping. I won't be very long.

---Will you be at work tomorrow?

➔ Note that when we have a plan or intention to do something in the future, we usually use other tenses or expressions, such as the present continuous tense or going to.

Form of Simple Future Tense: Be going to

a) Affirmative (positive) Sentences

I	am going to	write the letter. wash the car.
He She It	is going to	
We You They	are going to	

---I am going to eat lunch at 12:30 this afternoon.

---She is going to watch the film on the TV after she finishes her homework.

---Tom is studying hard. He is going to pass the test.

---Mr. Watson is going to be here tomorrow.

b) Negative Sentences

I	am not going to	write the letter. wash the car.
He She It	is not going to	
We You They	are not going to	

---I didn't study last night, and I am not going to study tonight either.

---They are not going to play football this afternoon.

---John is sick. He isn't going to be in class tomorrow.

---I have changed my plans. I am not going to fly to Istanbul this weekend.

c) Question Sentences

Am	I	going to	write the letter? wash the car?
Is	He She it		
Are	We You they		

---Are you going to stay at home this weekend?
---Is she going to watch TV this evening?
---What are they going to do tomorrow?
---Are you going to call me later?

Using Simple Future Tense: Will vs. Be going to

a) Using "will" to express a voluntary action / willingness

A: I'm really hungry.

B: I'll make some sandwiches.

A: These bags are so heavy!

B: I'll help you.

A: The phone is ringing.

B: I'll get it.

b) Using "will" in promises.

---Don't worry! I will call you as soon as I arrive at the airport.

---Thank you for lending me the money. I will pay it back on Friday. I promise!

---I promise I will not tell him about the surprise birthday party.

c) Using "be going to" to express a future plan.

---I am tired of taking the bus to work. I am going to buy a car as soon as possible.

---I bought some paint this morning. I am going to paint the garage tomorrow.

- I am going to start making dinner before my wife gets home from work today.
- We are going to wait here until Jessica comes.
- When they get to the hotel, they are going to jump into the swimming pool.

d) Using "be going to" and "will" to express predictions

- The weather reports say it will be sunny tomorrow.
- Look at those black clouds. It's going to rain.
- Be careful. You will hurt yourself!
- She is studying hard. She is going to pass the exam.
- I think Persepolis will become the champion this year.

Using Present Continuous for Future

- Bill is coming to the meeting tomorrow. (= Bill is going to come to the meeting tomorrow.)
- We are flying to Istanbul tonight. (= We are going to fly to Istanbul tomorrow.)
- They are playing football this afternoon. (=They are going to play football this afternoon.)
- I am leaving home tomorrow morning. (= I am going to leave home tomorrow morning.)

Using Simple Present for Future

- The bus leaves the station at 7:45 tomorrow morning.
- The semester ends in two more weeks.
- His new job starts next Friday.

Future Time Clauses with "Before, After, When"

- ✓---Before Mary goes to school tomorrow, she will eat breakfast.
- ✗---Before Mary ~~will~~ go to school tomorrow, she will eat breakfast.
- ✓---After I eat dinner tonight, I will do my homework.
- ✗---After I ~~will~~ eat dinner tonight, I will do my homework.
- ✓---I will get some fresh fruit when I go to the market tomorrow.
- ✗---I will get some fresh fruit when I ~~will~~ go to the market tomorrow.

Present plans for future activities: Using Intend, Plan, Hope

---I intend to go to London. / I am intending to go to London.

(INCORRECT: I ~~will intend~~ to go to London)

---I'm planning to buy another car this year. / I plan to buy another car this year.

(INCORRECT: I ~~will plan~~ to buy another car this year.)

---I am hoping to finish the school this semester. / I hope to finish the school this semester. (INCORRECT: I ~~will hope~~ to finish the school this semester.)

Future Continuous Tense:

How do we make the Future Continuous Tense?

The structure of the future continuous tense is:

subject	+	auxiliary verb WILL	+	auxiliary verb BE	+	main verb
		invariable		invariable		present participle
		will		be		base + ing

For negative sentences in the future continuous tense, we insert not between will and be. For question sentences, we exchange the subject and will. Look at these example sentences with the future continuous tense:

	subject	auxiliary verb		auxiliary verb	main verb	
+	I	will		be	working	at 10am.
+	You	will		be	lying	on a beach tomorrow.
-	She	will	not	be	using	the car.
-	We	will	not	be	having	dinner at home.
?	Will	you		be	playing	football?
?	Will	they		be	watching	TV?

When we use the future continuous tense in speaking, we often contract the subject and will:

I will	I'll
you will	you'll
he will she will it will	he'll she'll it'll
we will	we'll

they will	they'll
-----------	---------

For spoken negative sentences in the future continuous tense, we contract with won't, like this:

I will not	I won't
you will not	you won't
he will not she will not it will not	he won't she won't it won't
we will not	we won't
they will not	they won't

We sometimes use **shall** instead of **will**, especially for **I** and **we**.

Adverbs used with this tense:

1. At 7 tomorrow

2. At this time + adverbs for future

At this time next Friday

At this time next week

At this time next tomorrow

3. All + the + adverbs for future

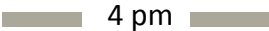
All the next week

All the tomorrow

How do we use the Future Continuous Tense?

The future continuous tense expresses action at a particular moment in the future. The action will start before that moment but it will not have finished at that moment. For example, tomorrow I will start work at 2pm and stop work at 6pm:

---At 4 pm tomorrow, I will be working.

past	present	future
<div style="text-align: right;">  </div>		
		At 4 pm, I will be in the middle of working.

When we use the future continuous tense, our listener usually knows or understands what time we are talking about. Look at these examples:

- I will be playing tennis at 10 am tomorrow.
- They won't be watching TV at 9 pm tonight.
- What will you be doing at 10 pm tonight?
- What will you be doing when I arrive?
- She will not be sleeping when you telephone her.
- We 'll be having dinner when the film starts.
- Take your umbrella. It will be raining when you return.

Future Perfect Tense:

The future perfect tense is quite an easy tense to understand and use. The future perfect tense talks about the past in the future.

How do we make the Future Perfect Tense?

The structure of the future perfect tense is:

subject	+	auxiliary verb WILL	+	auxiliary verb HAVE	+	main verb
		invariable		invariable		past participle
		will		have		V3

Look at these example sentences in the future perfect tense:

	subject	auxiliary verb		auxiliary verb	main verb	
+	I	will		have	finished	by 10am.
+	You	will		have	forgotten	me by then.
-	She	will	not	have	gone	to school.
-	We	will	not	have	left.	
?	Will	you		have	arrived?	
?	Will	they		have	received	it?

In speaking with the future perfect tense, we often contract the subject and will. Sometimes, we contract the subject, will and have all together:

I will have	I'll have	I'll've
you will have	you'll have	you'll've
he will have she will have it will have	he'll have she'll have it'll have	he'll've she'll've it'll've
we will have	we'll have	we'll've

they will have	they'll have	they'll've
----------------	--------------	------------

We sometimes use **shall** instead of **will**, especially for **I** and **we**.

How do we use the Future Perfect Tense?

The future perfect tense expresses action in the future before another action in the future. This is the past in the future. For example:

---The train will leave the station at 9 am. You will arrive at the station at 9.15 am. When you arrive, the train will have left.

---The train <u>will have left</u> when <u>you arrive</u> .		
past	present	future
		Train leaves in future at 9 am.
		<div> <div>9</div> <div>9.15</div> <div></div> <div></div> </div>
		You arrive in future at 9.15 am.

Look at some more examples:

---You can call me at work at 8 am. I will have arrived at the office by 8.

---They will be tired when they arrive. They will not have slept for a long time.

---"Mary won't be at home when you arrive."

---"Really? Where will she have gone?"

You can sometimes think of the future perfect tense like the present perfect tense, but instead of your viewpoint being in the present, it is in the future:

present perfect tense				future perfect tense			
	have					will	
	done					done	

	>					>
past	now	future		past	now	future

Future Perfect Continuous Tense:

How do we make the Future Perfect Continuous Tense?

The structure of the future perfect continuous tense is:

subject	+	auxiliary verb WILL	+	auxiliary verb HAVE	+	auxiliary verb BE	+	main verb
		invariable		invariable		past participle		present participle
		will		have		been		base + ing

For negative sentences in the future perfect continuous tense, we insert not between will and have. For question sentences, we exchange the subject and will. Look at these example sentences with the future perfect continuous tense:

	subject	auxiliary verb		auxiliary verb	auxiliary verb	main verb	
+	I	will		have	been	working	for four hours.
+	You	will		have	been	travelling	for two days.
-	She	will	not	have	been	using	the car.
-	We	will	not	have	been	waiting	long.
?	Will	you		have	been	playing	football?
?	Will	they		have	been	watching	TV?

When we use the future perfect continuous tense in speaking, we often contract the subject and auxiliary verb:

I will	I'll
you will	you'll
he will she will it will	he'll she'll it'll
we will	we'll
they will	they'll

For negative sentences in the future perfect continuous tense, we contract with won't, like this:

I will not	I won't
you will not	you won't
he will not she will not it will not	he won't she won't it won't
we will not	we won't
they will not	they won't

How do we use the Future Perfect Continuous Tense?

We use the future perfect continuous tense to talk about a long action before some point in the future. Look at these examples:

---I will have been working here for ten years next week.

---He will be tired when he arrives. He will have been traveling for 24 hours.

Tests:

1. They are in the class, what?

1. do they do 2. they do 3. are they doing 4. they are doing

2. You cannot see him, he to his manager at the moment.

1. is speaking 2. speaks 3. has spoken 4. spoke

3. The weather hot in summer.

1. has gotten 2. got 3. is getting 4. gets

4. The sun from the east, and sets in the west.

1. rose 2. is rising 3. rises 4. has risen

5. "Do you know him?" "Yes, I"

1. do 2. know 3. am 4. did

6. Listen! She the Violin.

1. plays 2. is playing 3. played 4. has played

7. Smoking a lot of illnesses.

1. causes 2. caused 3. is causing 4. had caused

8. She her teeth three times a day.

1. brush 2. is brushing 3. brushes 4. has brushed

9. Andy is ill, so he a doctor tomorrow.

1. goes to see 2. is going to see 3. go to see 4. went to see

10. Our team every match so far this year, but we still have three more games.

1. has won 2. had won 3. wins 4. is winning

11. His letter

1. has just arrived 2. has just arrive 3. is just arriving 4. just has arrived

12. She the problem yet.

1. isn't explained 2. hasn't explained 3. has explained 4. haven't explained

13. I English since I was a child.

1. haven't spoken 2. has spoken 3. don't speak 4. am speaking

14. My friend in that factory for 20 years.

1. have worked 2. has worked 3. is working 4. worked

15. What be doing this time tomorrow?

1. were you 2. did you 3. have you 4. will you

16. She was so surprised, because she a dangerous animal before.

1. never saw 2. was never seeing 3. had never seen 4. never had seen

17. He had worked on the problem before he it.

1. solved 2. had solved 3. has solved 4. was solving

18. I saw a strange accident while I of the window.

1. looked out 2. had looked out 3. has looked out 4. was looking out

19. How long ago?

1. he left 2. did he leave 3. had he left 4. was he leaving

20. They at this time next week.

1. will study 2. will be studying 3. would study 4. will have studied

21. This time tomorrow, we to Isfahan by bus.

1. have be going 2. will be going 3. have gone 4. would have gone

22. No one from him for the past six months.

1. had heard 2. has heard 3. heard 4. hears

23. Professor Smith refused to lecture because he his notes at home.

1. had left 2. has left 3. is leaving 4. was leaving

24. I to the cinema since last month.

1. didn't go 2. hadn't go 3. haven't gone 4. wouldn't go

25. David passed the exam because he enough before taking it.

1. had studied 2. has studied 3. would study 4. was studying

26. How many times a week English so far?

1. did you have 2. do you have 3. have you had 4. you have had

27. The books were so dusty that it was obvious that no one them for a long time.

1. had read 2. has read 3. hadn't read 4. hasn't read

28. The lady the dinner before her husband arrived.

1. will cook 2. would cook 3. had cooked 4. has cooked

29. Ali was late to class. The teacher the lesson when he entered the classroom.

1. would begin 2. has begun 3. had begun 4. will begin

30. Don't be in a hurry. You shouldn't get off the train before it

1. stops 2. stopped 3. will be stopped 4. will stop

31. There is a good program on channel three at eleven o'clock tonight.....it?

1. do you watch 2. did you watch
3. have you watched 4. are you going to watch

32. This is the fourth time he my car.

1. damages 2. is damaging 3. has damaged 4. has been damaging

33. How long you with her.

1. are, working 2. have, being worked
3. were, working 4. have, been working

34. That man on the corner all day.

1. has been standing 2. has stood
3. was being stood 4. are standing

35. This watch since fifty years ago.

1. worked 2. was going to work
3. had worked 4. has been working

36. I'm tired! I all day, and I haven't finished yet.

1. work 2. was working
3. have worked 4. have been working

37. Did he to school at 8 o'clock yesterday morning?

1. went 2. go 3. going 4. gone

38. I usually..... him on Mondays?

1. see 2. saw 3. seen 4. seeing

39. Hamid a sandwich in that restaurant last night.

1. eats 2. ate 3. eat 4. eaten

40. He generally speaks to me in English, but at home he French.

1. speaks 2. is speaking 3. has spoken 4. has speaking

41. Please be quiet. I to answer these questions.

1. try 2. am trying 3. have tried 4. have been trying

42. Listen, Mary..... the Guitar in her room.

1. plays 2. play 3. has played 4. is playing

43. Look! The thief to break window.

1. tries 2. is trying 3. is tried 4. is being tried

44. My friend usually plays tennis, but when I last saw her she ping-pong.

1. is playing 2. has played 3. played 4. was playing

45. Money its value from gold.

1. get 2. gets 3. is getting 4. was getting

46. Babieswhen they are hungry.

1. are crying 2. cry 3. have cried 4. have been crying

47. I wasto the radio at 9 o'clock.

1. listened 2. listening 3. listen 4. listens

48. We were yesterday.

1. writing 2. write 3. wrote 4. writes

49. I was to the radio all night last night.

1. listen 2. listened 3. listening 4. listens

50. When they were watching TV, Ali remembered that he the door.

1. didn't lock 2. hadn't locked 3. hasn't locked 4. wouldn't lock

51. I from him for a long time.

1. not have heard 2. have heard not 3. not have heard 4. have not heard

52. "Has anybody called today?" "The telephone has not rung I came."

1. before 2. for 3. since 4. until

53. Mike television when his friend arrived.

1. has watched 2. was watching 3. watched 4. will be watching

54. When we were having dinner, I suddenly remembered that Ithe door.

1. didn't lock 2. hadn't locked 3. wouldn't lock 4. haven't locked

55. By 1950, he in Rome for twenty years.

1. had lived 2. has lived 3. was living 4. lived

56. I saw him at the moment he

1. entered 2. is entering 3. enters 4. has entered

57. The old lady fell as she the street.

1. is crossing 2. is crossed 3. was crossed 4. was crossing

58. Ali had already finished his lunch when his friend

1. came 2. has been coming 3. had come 4. was coming

59. When Rose opened her bag, she noticed someone her passport.

1. had taken 2. has taken 3. is taken 4. was taken

60. When we arrived, we didn't see anything because the police the cars away.

1. took 2. was taking 3. had taken 4. has taken

61. "Did he go to Europe last year?"

"No, he wanted to, but he enough money."

1. doesn't have 2. didn't have 3. hasn't had 4. hadn't had

62. His sudden absence surprised everyone. Yes, I was working in the kitchen when he

1. had left 2. has left 3. would leave 4. left

63. As he to jump over the rope, he fell and hurt himself.

1. has run 2. would run 3. would be running 4. was running

64. It was my first flight in an airplane. I was very afraid because Iby plane before.

1. didn't fly 2. haven't flown 3. hadn't flown 4. wasn't flying

65. We always to our aunt's house on Sundays when we lived there.

1. went

2. will go

3. were going

4. have gone

66. My sister a new car in 1364.

1. bought 2. had bought 3. has bought 4. would have bought

67. Every day last week, my father me to school in his car.

1. take 2. took 3. had taken 4. has taken

68. At seven o'clock this morning, my father in the garden.

1. is working 2. worked 3. was working 4. works

69. The writer put his pen on the desk

1. every day 2. tomorrow 3. a few minutes ago 4. next week

70. Childrentheir rooms every day.

1. doesn't cleans 2. doesn't clean 3. don't clean 4. don't cleans

71. The bird didn'tin the cage at all.

1. sings 2. sang 3. sung 4. sing

72. "Whatthe little monkey doing at the moment?" "I don't know."

1. does 2. is 3. do 4. was

73. "Where she her homework every day?" "In her room."

1. does, does 2. does, --- 3. ---, does 4. does, do

74. "Have you ever been to Europe?" "Yes, Iin London last year."

1. have 2. be 3. was 4. have been

75. Theylunch before their guests arrived.

1. had eaten 2. eat 3. eating 4. ate

76. The childbetween 10 and 12 yesterday.

1. was sleep 2. was sleeping 3. slept 4. sleep

77. "Why didn't you talk to that man?" "Ihim before."

1. didn't see 2. wasn't see 3. haven't seen 4. hadn't seen

78. Sara has not stopped speakingthe beginning of the class.

1. until 2. for 3. by 4. since

79. My father was so sad, because he.....the news.

1. has heard 2. has hear 3. heard 4. had heard

80. My brother has an exam tomorrow. Hestudy hard tonight.

1. had to 2. have to 3. has to 4. has

81. Yesterday, we waited for the bus for half an hour, but it didn't come. We
walk home.

1. have to 2. has to 3. had 4. had to

82. The roads are closed. He has to.....at home.

1. stays 2. stay 3. staying 4. to stay

83. "Howyou have to go to Tehran on Sundays?" "By bus."

1. did 2. do 3. does 4. are

84. Does your brother.....stand in line?

1. have to 2. has to 3. had 4. had to

85. He..... wake up early tomorrow, because tomorrow is Friday.

1. has not to 2. not has to 3. doesn't have to 4. doesn't has to

86. I must.....your parents.

1. see 2. seeing 3. to see 4. saw

87. The old man cut his finger.....

1. every day 2. tomorrow 3. an hour ago 4. a and c

88. A: "Why didn't you go to shiraz by plane?"

B: "Because when we arrived in the airport, the plane...."

1. took off 2. has taken off 3. taken off 4. had taken off

89. A: "Have you ever written a letter to your father?"

B: "Yes, I..... him a letter last month."

1. have written 2. had written 3. wrote 4. was writing

90. Which sentence is not grammatically correct?

1. I had not my lunch in a restaurant; I had my dinner in a restaurant.
2. They have had a big meal, so they are not hungry.

۸. ۳، three times a day نشان دهنده تکرار و زمان حال ساده می باشد.
۹. ۲، قصد انجام کار
۱۰. ۱، so far علامت حال کامل
۱۱. ۱، just قید زمان حال کامل و مابین فعل کمکی و فعل اصلی می آید.
۱۲. ۲، yet قید زمان حال کامل می باشد و در جملات منفی و بکار می رود.
۱۳. ۱، since نشانه حال کامل است
۱۴. ۲، for نشانه حال کامل
۱۵. ۴، قید زمان آینده + at this time علامت آینده استمراری است.
۱۶. ۳، قبل از because گذشته ساده آمده است و بعد از آن گذشته کامل می آید و never بین فعل کمکی و فعل اصلی.
۱۷. ۱، قبل از before گذشته کامل و بعد از آن گذشته ساده می آید.
۱۸. ۴، پس از while گذشته استمراری می آید.
۱۹. ۲، ago علامت گذشته ساده و چون جمله سئوالی است از فعل کمکی did استفاده می شود.
۲۰. ۲، رجوع به تست ۱۵
۲۱. ۲، رجوع به تست ۱۵
۲۲. ۲، رجوع به تست ۱۴
۲۳. ۱، رجوع به تست ۱۶
۲۴. ۳، رجوع به تست ۱۳
۲۵. ۱
۲۶. ۳، رجوع به تست ۱۰
۲۷. ۱، ماضی بعید است (عملی قبل از عمل دیگر در گذشته)
۲۸. ۳، قبل از before گذشته کامل و بعد از آن گذشته ساده می آید (عملی قبل از عمل دیگر در گذشته)
۲۹. ۳، قبل از when گذشته کامل و بعد از آن گذشته ساده می آید. (عملی قبل از عمل دیگر در گذشته)
۳۰. ۱، حال ساده
۳۱. ۴، قصد و منظور انجام کار
۳۲. ۳، many/several/three+times نشانه حال کامل
۳۳. ۴، how long علامت حال کامل استمراری
۳۴. ۱، حال کامل استمراری، از گذشته شروع شده هنوز هم ادامه دارد.
۳۵. ۴، since علامت حال کامل استمراری
۳۶. ۴، حال کامل استمراری، مخصوصا اشاره می کند که هنوز هم تمام نشده است.
۳۷. ۲، فعل کمکی did برای سئوالی کردن گذشته ساده و فعل به صورت مصدر بدون to می آید.
۳۸. ۱، usually و نیز روزهای هفته + on نشانه حال ساده هستند.
۳۹. ۲، last night نشانه گذشته ساده می باشد.
۴۰. ۱، حال ساده
۴۱. ۲، جملات امری، زمان جمله حال استمراری می باشد.
۴۲. ۴، رجوع شود به تست ۴۱ و ۶
۴۳. ۲، رجوع شود به تست ۶
۴۴. ۴، گذشته استمراری
۴۵. ۲، حال ساده
۴۶. ۲، حال ساده

۴۷. ۲، گذشته استمراری
۴۸. ۱، گذشته استمراری
۴۹. ۳، قید زمان گذشته + all نشان دهنده گذشته استمراری است.
۵۰. ۲، گذشته کامل، کاری قبل از کار دیگر در گذشته
۵۱. ۴، علامت حال کامل for
۵۲. ۳، حال کامل، قید آن since و ابتدای زمان
۵۳. ۲، گذشته استمراری، انجام دو کار همزمان در گذشته
۵۴. ۲، گذشته کامل، عملی قبل از عمل دیگر در گذشته
۵۵. ۱، گذشته کامل
۵۶. ۱
۵۷. ۴
۵۸. ۱
۵۹. ۱، گذشته کامل
۶۰. ۳، گذشته کامل رجوع شود به تست ۱۶
۶۱. ۲، گذشته ساده
۶۲. ۴، گذشته ساده
۶۳. ۴
۶۴. ۳
۶۵. ۱، گذشته ساده است به انتهای جمله که گذشته است دقت کنید.
۶۶. ۱، زمان گذشته ساده (در گذشته مشخص)
۶۷. ۲
۶۸. ۳، گذشته استمراری
۶۹. ۳، دقت کنید که زمان جمله گذشته ساده است. قسمت اول، دوم و سوم فعل put یکسان است و چون فاعل آن سوم شخص است ولی به آن s اضافه نشده، پس گذشته بودن آن اثبات می شود.
۷۰. ۳، every day قید زمان حال ساده است.
۷۱. ۴، منفی کردن گذشته ساده با did
۷۲. ۲، at the moment قید زمان حال استمراری
۷۳. ۴، every day قید زمان حال ساده است و چون سئوالی است فعل کمکی does اضافه و s یا es فعل حذف می شود.
۷۴. ۳، last year قید زمان گذشته ساده
۷۵. ۱، گذشته کامل
۷۶. ۲، گذشته استمراری
۷۷. ۴، قبل از before گذشته کامل می آید.
۷۸. ۴، زمان جمله حال کامل می باشد
۷۹. ۴
۸۰. ۳
۸۱. ۴
۸۲. ۲
۸۳. ۲
۸۴. ۱

۸۵. ۳
۸۶. ۱
۸۷. ۳، زمان جمله گذشته است چون cut گذشته است و S سوم شخص نگرفته است.
۸۸. ۴
۸۹. ۳، چون زمان ذکر شده است پس گذشته ساده است و حال کامل نیست.
۹۰. ۱، have به معنی خوردن و فعل اصلی است برای منفی کردن آن در گذشته از didn't استفاده می شود.
۹۱. ۴، آینده استمراری
۹۲. ۱، چون said گذشته است و طبق ترتیب زمانها اگر اولی گذشته باشد زمان بعدی نمی تواند زمان حال باشد.
۹۳. ۱
۹۴. ۳، رجوع شود به تست ۹۲
۹۵. ۴، گزینه اوگزینه ۳ طبق تست ۹۲ اشتباه است. گزینه ۲ باید wants باشد (طبق قاعده پیروی فعل از فاعل)

Passives:

The passive voice involves a construction where the subject is acted on, as opposed to performing the action as in an active sentence. We will touch on this briefly, because academic writing, specifically writing argument, involves active style. But, the passive voice causes many problems with punctuation and grammar. It is also used in some reports. Let's change this next sentence to passive.

Steps: Changing an Active Sentence to a Passive Sentence (no **DO = Direct Object**):

1. Change Direct Object to Subject.
2. Bring down the main verb and change to past participle.
3. Add auxiliary verb.
4. Add *by* phrase: The subject of the active sentence becomes the object of the preposition in the passive sentence.

S–V–Direct Object

---I ate some rice.

1. Some rice
2. Some rice _____ eaten
3. Some rice was eaten by me.

1 3 2 4

Steps: Some rice/ was/ eaten/ by me.

Example:

Active: I **am gathering** carrots.

Passive: Carrots ***are being gathered*** by me.

Example:

---I **was teaching** the classes.

1. Change Direct Object to Subject.

The classes

2. Bring down main verb—change to v3

The classes _____ **taught**

3. Add auxiliary verb. If there is already an auxiliary verb, we bring it down, too, before we add a new one.

4. Aux./ add/ v3(past perfect)

---The classes **were *being* (added) taught**.

Because the main verb was progressive, the auxiliary verb we added must be progressive, as well. Also, we changed the auxiliary verb *was* from the active sentence to *were* in the passive sentence,

because the auxiliary verb must agree in number with the subject of the sentence. The subject *classes* is plural, so the auxiliary must be plural. Change the subject of the active sentence to the object of the preposition *by* in the passive sentence.

---The classes **were being taught** by me.

Exceptions:

---It rained last night. *No passive.*

---It happened. *No passive.*

Active Form

Passive Form

1. Simple present:

---They teach English in high schools.

---English is taught in high schools.

2. Present continuous:

---They are teaching English this year.

---English is being taught this year.

3. Present perfect:

---They have taught English for many years.

---English has been taught for many years.

4. Present perfect continuous:

---They have been teaching English for many years.---English has been being taught for many years.

5. Simple past:

---They taught English last year.

---English was taught last year.

6. Past continuous:

---They were teaching English when I started school.---English was being taught when I started school.

7. Past perfect:

---They had taught English for many years when I started school.

---English had been taught for many years when I started school.

8. Past perfect continuous:

---They had been teaching English for many years when I started school.

---English had been being taught for many years when I started school.

9. Future simple:

---They will teach English next year. ---English will be taught next year.

10. Future continuous:

---They will be teaching English next year.

---English will be being taught next year.

11. Future perfect:

---They will have taught English for three years by next September.

---English will have been taught for three years by next September.

12. Future perfect continuous:

---They will have been teaching English for three years by next September.

(This tense form is rarely used in passive.)

Tests:

1. He killed in an accident.

1. been 2. will 3. was 4. had

2. This book last year.

1. was written 2. was wrote 3. wrote 4. written

3. English all over the world.

1. taught 2. teach 3. is taught 4. are taught

4. The church before the war began.

1. had be damaged 2. had damaged
3. had being damaged 4. had been damaged

5. Some newspapers read by millions of people now.

1. are being 2. were being 3. are 4. have been

6. He three jobs since he returned from French.

1. was being offered 2. has been offered
3. was offered 4. had been offered

7. I believe the best way to learn a foreign language is to learn it in the country where it

1. is spoken 2. was spoken 3. spoke 4. are spoken

8. I'm not going to attend their party. You know I invited.

1. hadn't been 2. was not 3. haven't been 4. wouldn't

9. He didn't go to his friend's celebration since he to go there.

1. wasn't invited 2. had not invited
3. wouldn't be invited 4. hadn't been invited

10. The letter tomorrow morning.

1. will write 2. will be written 3. will be writing 4. will be wrote

11. The window yesterday by Ali.

1. was broken 2. is broken 3. were broken 4. broke

12. Why couldn't you use your bicycle this morning?

Because it

1. has been repairing 2. was being repaired

3. was having repaired

4. was repairing

13. The teacher told us that the exam papers next week.

1. will correct 2. would correct 3. will be corrected 4. would be corrected

14. The answers must written on one side of the paper only.

1. be 2. have 3. had 4. would

15. These days, football played all over the world.

1. be 2. is 3. was 4. being

16. All the cake eaten by the hungry children since their mother left them.

1. has been 2. have been 3. was 4. were

17. People should how to use energy properly.

1. be taught 2. be teaching 3. have taught 4. teach

18. This screw is too loose, it

1. had been made tighten 2. may have been tightened
3. should be tightened 4. was tightened

19. I would like to know how the height of huge waves at sea.

1. are measuring 2. are measured 3. is measuring 4. is measured

20. The picture by a small child and this surprised them greatly.

1. has drawn 2. had drawn 3. was drawn 4. drew

21. The building looks very old. It built many years ago.

1. had 2. has 3. is 4. was

22. The new book he has recently written very soon.

1. will be published 2. will publish
3. would be published 4. would publish

23. The room has to immediately.

1. repair 2. be repaired 3. will repair 4. have been repaired

24. Telephone by Graham Bell.

1. has invented 2. invented 3. was invented 4. has been invented

25. The driver you are talking about drives carelessly. He for dangerous driving yesterday.

1. fined 2. was fined 3. found 4. was found

26. The longest fish in the contest..... by Jim.

1. was catching 2. was caught 3. caught 4. has caught

27. Five hundred years ago, the sun to revolve around the earth. People did not know then what we know now.

1. has been thought 2. should be thought
3. was thought 4. had thought

28. During the winter months that village because of heavy snow.

1. is isolating 2. has been isolating 3. was isolated 4. had isolated

29. Shortly after taking off from India for Russia, the 727 missing.

1. reported 2. must have reported
3. was reported 4. might have reported

30. A: "Who do you think will bring the tea?" B: "The tea by the waitress."

1. will brought 2. will be brought 3. were brought 4. is brought

31. He heard on the evening news that a family of six..... in an explosion.

1. were being injured 2. have injured 3. had injured 4. had been injured

32. Many houses..... during the earthquake and they yet.

1. have been knocked down/weren't rebuilt
2. were knocked down/haven't been rebuilt
3. knocked down/haven't been rebuilt
4. had been knocked down/weren't rebuilt

33. The music was so wonderful that all the tickets

1. have been sold 2. will be sold 3. had sold 4. were sold

34. Various kinds of atomic weapons in the past few years by several countries.

1. are produced 2. have been produced
3. were produced 4. will be produced

35. A: "I heard you had an accident."

B: "Yes, but no one"

1. wasn't hurt 2. were hurt 3. was hurt 4. didn't hurt

36. Things a lot since Laurent was a child.

1. have changed 2. were changed 3. had been changing 4. had changed

37. How many innocent men..... by the hijackers?

1. had killed 2. has been killed 3. were killed 4. will have killed

38. Thirty-seven people till now after the demonstration against the government's policies.

1. have been arrested 2. have arrested
3. were arrested 4. had been arrested

39. By 2016 the entire railway network

1. will have been modernized 2. were to be modernized
3. will modernize 4. will have modernized

40. I had thought that we to dinner.

1. would invite 2. had invited
3. were going to be invited 4. were going to invite

41. The president and vice president are the only public officials in the United States

A

B

who choose in a nationwide election, which takes place every four years.

C

D

تست های معلوم و مجهول

۱. مجهول گذشته ساده
۲. ۱، last year علامت گذشته ساده
۳. ۳ مجهول حال ساده
۴. ۴، قبل از before گذشته کامل بکار می رود.
۵. ۱، now علامت حال استمراری است.
۶. ۲، since علامت حال کامل
۷. ۱، مجهول حال ساده
۸. ۳، مجهول حال کامل
۹. ۴، مجهول گذشته کامل، عملی قبل از عمل دیگر
۱۰. ۲، tomorrow علامت آینده ساده
۱۱. ۱، yesterday قید گذشته ساده
۱۲. ۲، مجهول گذشته استمراری
۱۳. ۴، next week علامت آینده ساده ولی طبق قاعده ترتیب زمانها چون told گذشته است گزینه ۳ نمی تواند پاسخ صحیح باشد.

۱۴. ۱، مڊال مجهول
۱۵. ۲، مجهول حال ساده
۱۶. ۱
۱۷. ۱، رجوع شود به تست ۱۴
۱۸. ۳، رجوع شود به تست ۱۴
۱۹. ۴، مجهول حال ساده (دقت کنید که فاعل جمله height است نه waves و چون مفرد است گزینه ۴ درست است).
۲۰. ۳، مجهول گذشته ساده
۲۱. ۴، مجهول گذشته ساده، ago قید گذشته ساده است.
۲۲. ۱، مجهول آینده ساده، soon قید آینده ساده
۲۳. ۲، مجهول: have to/has to + be + pp
۲۴. ۳، مجهول گذشته ساده
۲۵. ۲، مجهول گذشته ساده
۲۶. ۲، مجهول گذشته ساده
۲۷. ۳، مجهول گذشته ساده
۲۸. ۳
۲۹. ۳، مجهول گذشته ساده
۳۰. ۲، مجهول آینده ساده
۳۱. ۴، مجهول گذشته کامل
۳۲. ۲، مجهول گذشته ساده
۳۳. ۴، مجهول گذشته ساده
۳۴. ۳، مجهول گذشته ساده
۳۵. ۳، چون no one خود منفی و مفرد می باشد و احتیاج به فعل کمکی نیست (گذشته ساده)
۳۶. ۱، مجهول حال کامل
۳۷. ۳
۳۸. ۱، till now قید حال کامل است.
۳۹. ۱، قید زمان + by علامت آینده کامل است.
۴۰. ۳، فقط این گزینه مجهول است (به مطالب گفته شده درمورد تشخیص معلوم و مجهول توجه کنید)

Exercise 7.5: From the book (Ace the TOEFL Essay)

Directions: Change the following sentences from active to passive voice.

1. The boys played football.
2. The army was flying helicopters over the base late at night.
3. The girls achieved the highest award given by the organization.
4. The baseball team won most of the games they played this year.
5. The jury decided the fate of the accused murderers.
6. The plane crashed in the Andes late last night.
7. No one survived the crash in the Andes last night.
8. The group of boys taunted the girls walking across the yard.
9. The kittens roamed about the yard playing.

10. The professor pounded the desk in frustration.
11. The teacher modeled his class after what he was taught.
12. The bear splashed through the stream clumsily.
13. The best student flunked the exam.
14. The girl perused the headlines for any word of snow.
15. The fat, old, ugly bear consumed the picnic.
16. Beside the road, a snake swallowed the mouse.
17. The regiment formed a battle line.
18. The ball hit the backboard and made a noise.
19. The policemen captured the murderer behind the station.
20. An old lady hobbled along the sidewalk.
21. A dog ripped open the sack when he smelled the meat.

Answers to Exercise 7.5

Directions: Change the following sentences from active to passive voice.

1. The boys played football.

Football was played by the boys.

2. The army was flying helicopters over the base late at night.

Helicopters were being flown by the army over the base late at night.

3. The girls achieved the highest award given by the organization.

The highest award given by the organization was achieved by the girls.

4. The baseball team won most of the games they played this year.

Most of the games they played this year were won by the baseball team.

5. The jury decided the fate of the accused murderers.

The fate of the accused murderers was decided by the jury.

6. The plane crashed in the Andes late last night.

The plane was crashed in the Andes late last night.

7. No one survived the crash in the Andes last night.

The crash in the Andes last night was not survived by anyone.

8. The group of boys taunted the girls walking across the yard.

The girls walking across the yard were taunted by the group of boys.

9. The kittens roamed about the yard playing.

The yard was roamed about by the kittens playing.

10. The professor pounded the desk in frustration.

The desk was pounded in frustration by the professor.

11. The teacher modeled his class after what he was taught.

The class was modeled by the teacher after what he was taught.

12. The bear splashed through the stream clumsily.

The stream was clumsily splashed through by the bear.

13. The best student flunked the exam.

The exam was flunked by the best student.

14. The girl perused the headlines for any word of snow.

The headlines were perused by the girl for any word of snow.

15. The fat, old, ugly bear consumed the picnic.

The picnic was consumed by the fat, old, ugly bear.

16. Beside the road, a snake swallowed the mouse.

The mouse was swallowed by a snake beside the road.

17. The regiment formed a battle line.

A battle line was formed by the regiment.

18. The ball hit the backboard and made a noise.

The blackboard was hit and a noise was made by the ball.

19. The policemen captured the murderer behind the station.

The murderer was captured behind the station by the policemen.

20. An old lady hobbled along the sidewalk.

The sidewalk was hobbled along by the old lady.

21. A dog ripped open the sack when he smelled the meat.

The sack was ripped open by a dog when he smelled the meat.

Exercise 7.6

Directions: Change from active to passive voice.

1. Eating an apple is a noisy experience.
2. Along the highway, we encountered a wolf.
3. To sing a song helps the heart.
4. Singing achieves a merriment in the heart.
5. The old miser distributed ill will around his neighborhood.
6. The rotten apple stank.
7. The glisten of the lights made the car shine.
8. The car's brakes squeaked loudly as he applied them.
9. The cub pranced through its den.
10. The water made a trickling sound as it ran down the drain.
11. To win the game, the goalie cheated.
12. He repaired the copier.
13. He is eating dinner later now.
14. The lady tossed the ashtray into the receptacle.
15. The computer whirred when he turned it on.

Answers to Exercise 7.6

Directions: Change from active to passive voice.

1. No change
2. A wolf was encountered by us along the highway.
3. The heart is helped by singing a song. (*by + gerund*)
4. A merriment in the heart is achieved by singing.

5. Ill will was distributed around his neighborhood by the old miser.
6. No change
7. The car was made to shine by the glisten of the lights.
8. The brakes were made to squeak loudly as he applied them.
9. The den was pranced through by the cub.
10. A trickling sound was made by the water as it ran down the drain.
11. No change: Can make gerund. Cheating was done by the goalie . . .
12. The copier was repaired by him.
13. Dinner is being eaten later now.
14. The ashtray was tossed into the receptacle by the lady.
15. No change: Can make gerund. Whirring was made by the computer.

Exercise 7.7

Directions: Change the following sentence from active to passive, and punctuate it.

The man wrapped the gift then he hid the bottle in the fireplace next the man threw out the extra paper finally he discarded the evidence

Answers to Exercise 7.7

Directions: Change the following sentence from active to passive, and punctuate it.

The gift was wrapped by the man; then, the bottle was hidden by him in the fireplace. Next, the extra paper was thrown out by the man. Finally, the evidence was discarded by him.

Nouns:

A *noun* is a word that names persons, animals, places, objects, and abstract ideas. It is true that the other parts of speech can name things, too, but we usually associate the naming function with nouns. Here are some examples of nouns:

Cheryl, woman, girl, armadillo, scorpion, stone, cactus, desert, sand, stream, honesty, love, infinity, pride, courage

➔➔➔ Nouns come in these varieties: common nouns, proper nouns, compound nouns, and collective nouns.

1. **Common nouns** name any one of a class of person, place, or thing.

---Girl ---City ---Food

---Insects thrive in warm weather.

---Botany is the study of plants.

2. **Proper nouns** name a specific person, place, or thing. Proper nouns are always capitalized.

---Barbara

---New York City

---The Milky Way has a graceful, pinwheel like form.

---Switzerland owes much to its glaciers.

➔➔➔

3. **Compound nouns** are two or more nouns that function as a single unit. A compound noun can be **two individual words**, **words joined by a hyphen**, or **two words combined**.

a. Individual words:

---Time capsule

b. Hyphenated words:

---Great-uncle

c. Combined words:

---Basketball

4. **Collective nouns** name groups of people or things.

---Audience

---Family

---Herd

---Crowd

The majority + singular verb
The majority of the + plural noun + plural verb

---The majority believes that we are in no danger.

---The majority of the students believe him to be innocent.

The police/sheep/fish + plural verb

---The sheep are breaking away.

---The police come only to see the dead bodies and a ruin in the bank.

A couple + singular verb

---A couple is walking on the path.

The couple + plural verb

---The couple are racing their horses through the meadow.

Flock of birds, sheep
herd of cattle
pack of dogs + singular verb
school of fish
pride of lions
pod of adult dolphins
pod of pilot whales

---The flock of birds is circling overhead.

Possessive Nouns:

In grammar, *possession* shows ownership. Follow these rules to create possessive nouns.

1. With singular nouns, add an apostrophe and an s.

Dog → ---Dog's bone

Singer → ---Singer's voice

2. With plural nouns ending in s, add an apostrophe after the s.

Dogs' → ---Dogs' bones

Singers' → ---Singers' voices

3. With plural nouns not ending in s, add an apostrophe and an s.

Men → ---Men's books

Mice → ---Mice's tails

Countable and Uncountable Nouns: Uncountable Nouns

۱- کل گروه که از چیزهای یکسانی تشکیل شده مثل:

Equipment, clothing, food, furniture, money, traffic, jewelry

۲- مایعات:

Water, coffee, tea, milk, oil, soup, gasoline, blood,

۳- جامداتی مثل

Ice, bread, butter, cheese, meat, gold, iron, silver, glass, paper, cotton, wood

۴- گازها:

Steam, vapor, oxygen, nitrogen, smoke, pollution,

۵- ذرات و اجزاء:

Rice, chalk, corn, dust, hair, pepper, salt, sand, sugar

۶- اسم معنا:

Beauty, confidence, courage, education, fun, happiness, health, honesty, luck, intelligence, knowledge, wealth,

advice, information, news, evidence, proof,

homework, work

نکته: اگر work به معنی کار باشد، غیرقابل شمارش است ولی اگر به معنی اثر باشد، قابل شمارش است.

---Shakespeare's works are interesting. آثار شیکسپیر جالب هستند.

۷- زبانها:

Arabic, Chinese, English, Farsi

۸- رشته های درسی (دانشگاهی):

Chemistry, history, literature, theology, mathematics, physics,...

۹- پدیده های طبیعی:

Weather, fog, heat, rain, snow, wind, light, sunshine, fire, electricity,....

Many noncount nouns can be used as count nouns but with a predictable shift in meaning—to convey something like “different kinds of.” Here are some examples:

Gasoline—noncount: The price of *gasoline* is outrageous. (liquid)

Gasoline—count: The station sells three *gasolines*. (different grades of gasoline)

Spanish—noncount: I am learning *Spanish*. (language)

Spanish—count: There are several *Spanishes* in America. (different kinds of Spanish)

Cheese—noncount: I love *cheese*. (food)

Cheese—count: The store sells a variety of *cheeses*. (different kinds of cheese)

Some noncount nouns have count noun counterparts but with different meanings. Here are some examples:

Iron—noncount: The chain is made of *iron*. (material)

Iron—count: The hotel will provide *irons*. (electric appliances for pressing clothes)

Paper—noncount: Books are made of *paper*. (material)

Paper—count: The border guards stopped me and asked to see my papers. (official documents, especially ones that show who you are)

Chicken—noncount: *Chicken* is a heart-healthy meat. (food)

Chicken—count: There were a dozen *chickens* in the yard. (living animals)

Coffee—noncount: Too much *coffee* makes me nervous. (liquid)

Coffee—count: We would like two *coffees*, please. (cups or servings of coffee)

→→→ There are some irregular formations for noun plurals. Some of the most common ones are listed below.

Examples of irregular plurals:

Cactus *cacti*

Focus *foci*

Fungus *fungi*

Locus *loci*

---The *locus* **of** decision-making is sometimes far from the government's offices.

Nucleus *nuclei*

Syllabus *syllabi/syllabuses*

Analysis *analyses*

<i>Diagnosis</i>	<i>diagnoses</i>
<i>Oasis</i> [əʊ'eɪsɪs]	<i>oases</i>
<i>Thesis</i>	<i>theses</i>
<i>Crisis</i>	<i>crises</i>
<i>Phenomenon</i>	<i>phenomena</i>
<i>Criterion</i>	<i>criteria</i>
<i>Datum</i>	<i>data</i> //
<i>Medium</i>	<i>media</i>

واحه، آبادي يا مرغزار ميان کوير

Some nouns have the same form in the singular and the plural.

Examples:

Singular	Plural
<i>Species</i>	<i>species</i>
<i>Means</i>	<i>means</i>
<i>TV series</i>	<i>TV series</i>
<i>Aircraft</i>	<i>aircraft</i>
<i>A cod</i>	<i>two cod</i>
<i>A deer</i>	<i>two deer</i>
<i>A fish</i>	<i>two fish</i>
<i>A sheep</i>	<i>two sheep</i>
<i>A shrimp</i>	<i>two shrimp</i>
<i>A trout</i>	<i>two trout</i>

Foreign plurals: Some foreign words in English have retained their foreign plurals. Some have both foreign and English plurals. Take care, however, with the words that are asterisked below because the foreign plural of these is used in a different sense from the English plural. Check these words under individual entries for the distinction in meaning.

Singular -a	foreign plural	English plural
<i>Alga</i>	<i>algae</i>	– BrE ['ælgɪ:] NAmE ['ælgɪ:]
<i>Antenna</i>	<i>antennae</i>	<i>antennas*</i>
<i>Formula</i>	<i>formulae</i>	<i>formulas*</i>
<i>Larva</i>	<i>larvae</i>	–
<i>Nebula</i>	<i>nebulae</i>	<i>nebulas</i>
<i>Vertebra</i>	<i>vertebrae</i>	<i>vertebras</i>
<i>Fossa</i>	<i>fossae</i>	

Singular -eau -ex/-ix	foreign plural	English plural
<i>Appendix</i>	<i>appendices</i>	<i>appendixes*</i>
<i>Index</i>	<i>indices</i>	<i>indexes*</i>
<i>Matrix</i>	<i>matrices</i>	<i>matrixes</i>
<i>Vortex</i>	<i>vortices</i>	<i>vortexes</i>

Singular -is		
<i>Analysis</i>	<i>analyses</i>	–

<i>Axis</i>	<i>axes</i>	– the vertical/horizontal axis [ˌhɒrɪˈzənt(ə)l] US
<i>Crisis</i>	<i>crises</i>	–
<i>Diagnosis</i>	<i>diagnoses</i>	–
<i>Hypothesis</i>	<i>hypotheses</i>	–
<i>Parenthesis</i>	<i>parentheses</i>	–
<i>Synopsis</i>	<i>synopses</i>	–
Singular –o		
<i>Graffito</i>	<i>graffiti</i>	– mural – intramural / interpersonal/intrapersonal
<i>Virtuoso</i>	<i>virtuosi</i>	<i>virtuosos</i>
Singular –on		
<i>Criterion</i>	<i>criteria</i>	–
<i>Phenomenon</i>	<i>phenomena</i>	–
Singular –um		
<i>Aquarium</i>	<i>aquaria</i>	<i>aquariums</i>
<i>Bacterium</i>	<i>bacteria</i>	–
<i>Curriculum</i>	<i>curricula</i>	<i>curriculum</i> s
<i>Datum</i>	<i>data</i>	–
<i>Memorandum</i>	<i>memoranda</i>	<i>memorandums</i>
<i>Millennium</i>	<i>millennia</i>	<i>millenniums</i>
<i>Stratum</i>	<i>strata</i>	–
<i>Ultimatum</i>	<i>ultimata</i>	<i>ultimatums</i>
<i>Ovum</i>	<i>ova</i>	–
<i>Addendum</i>	<i>addenda</i>	<i>lacto ovo vegetarian</i>
<i>Spectrum</i>	<i>spectra</i>	
Singular –us		
<i>Bacillus</i>	<i>bacilli</i>	–
<i>Cactus</i>	<i>cacti</i>	<i>cactuses</i>
<i>Fungus</i>	<i>fungi</i>	<i>funguses</i>
<i>Hippopotamus</i>	<i>hippopotami</i>	<i>hippopotamuses</i>
<i>Nucleus</i>	<i>nuclei</i>	–
<i>Radius</i>	<i>radii</i>	<i>radiuses</i>
<i>Stimulus</i>	<i>stimuli</i>	–
<i>Syllabus</i>	<i>syllabi</i>	<i>syllabuses</i>

➔➔ Some nouns are quite irregular in the formation of their plural. Some words **don't change**:

Aircraft, cannon, bison, cod, deer, sheep, trout, bass

Some have a **choice about changing or staying the same in the plural**:

Buffalo or buffaloes

Eskimo or Eskimos

➔➔ Words ending in *-f* and *-fe* generally add *-s* to form the plural:

Roof→ *roofs*

Cliff→ *cliffs*

Handkerchief→ *handkerchiefs*

Carafe→ *carafes*

Giraffe→ *giraffes*

➔➔ There are **13 exceptions** which end in *-ves* in the plural. You can always hear when this is the case, but here is the complete list for reference:

Knife/*knives*; Life/*lives*; Wife/*wives*; Elf/*elves*; Self/*selves*; Shelf/*shelves*; Calf/*calves*; Half/*halves*; Leaf/*leaves*; Sheaf/*sheaves*; Thief/*thieves*; Loaf/*loaves*; Wolf/*wolves*.

➔➔ **Four words** can be *either -fs or -ves*:

Hoofs/*hooves*; Scarfs/*scarves*; Turfs/*turves*; Wharfs/*wharves*.

➔➔ Some nouns have a plural form but take a singular verb.

Examples:

News ---The news is on at 6.30 p.m.

Athletics ---Athletics is good for young people.

Linguistics ---Linguistics is the study of language.

Darts ---Darts is a popular game in England.

Billiards ---Billiards is played all over the world.

TOEFL:

Some nouns with a singular form can be treated either as singular (with a singular

verb) or plural (with a plural verb):

---The council has (or have) postponed a decision on the new road.

Other words like this include association, audience, class, club, college, committee, community, company, crowd, department, electorate, enemy, family, firm, generation, government, group, jury, orchestra, population, press, public, school, staff, team, university, and the names of specific organizations such as the Bank of England, the BBC, IBM, and Sony. We use a singular verb if we see the institution or organization as a whole unit and a plural verb if we see it as a collection of individuals. Often you can use either with very little difference in meaning, although in formal writing (such as academic writing) it is more common to use a singular verb.

In some contexts a plural form of the verb is needed. We would say:

---The committee usually raise their hands to vote 'Yes', (not ...raises its hands...) as this is something that the individuals do, not the committee as a whole. In others, a singular form is preferred. We would say:

---The school is to close next year, (not the school are...) as we are talking about something which happens to the school as a building or institution, not to the individuals that comprise it.

Plural-Only Nouns: Some plural nouns have no corresponding singular form at all or else have a singular form that differs substantially from the meaning of the plural.

One group of plural-only nouns refers to tools or articles of clothing that have two equal parts joined together:

Tools: bellows, binoculars, (eye)glasses, forceps, pincers, scissors, shears, spectacles, tongs, tweezers

Clothing: braces, briefs, flannels, jeans, pants, pajamas, shorts, slacks, suspenders, tights, tops, trousers, trunks

Here are some other plural-only nouns with idiomatic meanings:

Accommodations (living arrangements)

Funds (money)

Arms (weapons)

Guts (courage)

Brains (intellect)

Looks (appearance)

Communications (means of communication)

Manners (behavior)

Credentials (records or documents)

Pains (trouble, effort)

Customs (duty)

Wits (intelligence)

A few plural-only nouns have no plural marking: cattle, livestock, poultry, people, police. Here are some examples with the plural verb underlined:

---The police are investigating the crime.

---People were beginning to talk.

Some nouns are usually plural and take a plural verb. These include belongings, clothes, congratulations, earnings, goods, outskirts, particulars (= information), premises (= building), riches, savings, stairs, surroundings, thanks, pliers انبردست, tongs انبرک, scissors, shorts, pants, jeans, trousers, eyeglasses, spectacles, pajamas, binoculars, tweezers: موچين

---The pants are in the drawer.

---A pair of pants is in the drawer.

---The company's earnings have increased for the last five years.

The nouns police and people also always have a plural verb. The noun whereabouts can be used with either a singular or plural verb.

➔➔➔ Some nouns always end in -s and look as if they are plural, but when we use them as the subject of a sentence they have a singular verb:

---The news from the Middle East seems very encouraging.

Other words like this include means (= 'method' or 'money'); some academic disciplines, e.g. economics, linguistics, mathematics, phonetics, politics, statistics, physics; some sports, e.g. gymnastics, athletics; and some diseases, e.g. diabetes, measles, rabies. However, compare:

---Politics is popular at this university.

---Statistics was always my worst subject.

---Economics has only recently been recognized as a scientific study.

➔➔➔ General use

---Her politics are bordering on the fascist. (= political beliefs)

---Statistics are able to prove anything you want them to. (= numerical information)

---The economics behind their policies are unreasonable. (= the financial system)

TOEFL: Singular and Plural Expressions of Noncount Nouns. Remember that the following singular and plural expressions are idiomatic:

A piece of advice

A piece of bread

A piece of equipment

A piece of furniture

A piece of information

A piece of jewelry

A piece of luggage

A piece of mail

A piece of music

A piece of news

A piece of toast
A loaf of bread
A slice of bread
An ear of corn
A bar of soap
A bolt of lightning
A clap of thunder
A gust of wind

→→→A pair of pants...+ singular verb

---A pair of pants is in the drawer.

---The pants are in the drawer.

Two pieces of advice
Two pieces of bread
Two pieces of equipment
Two pieces of furniture
Two pieces of information
Two pieces of jewelry
Two pieces of luggage
Two pieces of mail
Two pieces of music
Two pieces of news
Two pieces of toast
Two loaves of bread
Two slices of bread
Two ears of corn
Two bars of soap
Two bolts of lightning
Two claps of thunder
Two gusts of wind

Avoid using the noncount noun without the singular or plural idiom to express a singular or plural.

✗---A mail travels faster when the zip code is indicated on the envelope.

✓---A piece of mail travels faster when the zip code is indicated on the envelope.

✗---There is a limit of two carry-on luggages for each passenger.

✓---There is a limit of two pieces of carry-on luggage for each passenger.

✗---Each furniture in this display is on sale for half price.

✓---Each piece of furniture in this display is on sale for half price.

✗---I'd like a steak, a salad, and a corn's ear with butter.

✓---I'd like a steak, a salad, and an ear of corn with butter.

---The Engineering Department purchased a new equipment to simulate conditions in outer space.

---The Engineering Department purchased a new piece of equipment to simulate conditions in outer space.

---Hybrids have one more.....per plant than the other varieties.

(A) corns

(B) ear of corn

(C) corn ears

(D) corn's ears

---A few tiles on Skylab were the only equipments that failed to perform well in outer space.

Possessive Forms of Nouns

Modern English is a hybrid of two languages: Old English (Anglo-Saxon) and French. Reflecting this mixed heritage, Modern English has two ways of forming the possessive: the Old English way, which uses an **inflectional ending** ('s and s'), and an **of possessive** that is a kind of loan-translation of the French way of forming the possessive. Here is an example of each:

Inflectional possessive: *Shakespeare's* plays

of possessive: the plays *of* Shakespeare

Inflectional Possessives

It is essentially a historical accident that the regular plural and the possessive inflections are pronounced exactly alike, with the same sibilant sounds. Up until the sixteenth century, the plural and the possessives were also spelled alike: -s. During the sixteenth century, however, the apostrophe began to be used for the possessive ending to distinguish it from the plural ending. For example:

Singular	Possessive
Boy	boy's
Girl	girl's
Friend	friend's

The use of the apostrophe *after* the -s to signal the possessive use of a plural noun did not become widely accepted until the nineteenth century:

Plural	Plural Possessive
Boys	boys'
Girls	girls'
Friends	friends'

While it is correct to call -s' the "plural possessive," it is a mistake to think of the -'s as the "singular possessive." The problem with this definition arises with the possessive forms of irregular nouns that become plural by changing their vowel rather than by adding a plural -s. For example:

Singular		Plural	
Noun	Possessive	Noun	Possessive
Man	man's	men	men's
Woman	woman's	women	women's
Child	child's	children	children's

As you can see, -'s is used with these plural possessive nouns, not -s'. Using the -s' with these nouns would mean (incorrectly, of course) that the /s/ is what makes these nouns plural. What actually makes them plural is the change in their vowels.

A much better way to think of plurals and possessive is as follows:

Plural Only	Possessive Only	Both Plural and Possessive
-s	-'s	-s'

This analysis will help ensure that you will always use the right form. Mercifully, the spelling of the possessive forms is regular (though there are a few exceptions for proper nouns, which are discussed later in this section). Here are some examples using words that form their plurals in different ways.

WORDS ENDING IN A CONSONANT + Y

Singular		Plural	
Noun	Possessive	Noun	Possessive
Baby	baby's	babies	babies'
Family	family's	families	families'

WORDS ENDING IN O

Singular		Plural	
Noun	Possessive	Noun	Possessive
Ego	ego's	egos	egos'
Memo	memo's	memos	memos'
Hero	hero's	heroes	heroes'
Volcano	volcano's	volcanoes	volcanoes'

Notice that in the last two examples, the singular possessive and the plural forms are spelled differently.

WORDS ENDING IN F

Singular		Plural	
Noun	Possessive	Noun	Possessive
Thief	thief's	thieves	thieves'
Wolf	wolf's	wolves	wolves'

→→ The possessives of some proper nouns ending in a **sibilant sound** are often spelled with just an apostrophe. For example:

In Jesus' name (this spelling is conventional)

Ramses' tomb

Charles Dickens' novels

Kansas' main city

→→ **The Meaning of the Inflectional Possessive:** As its name would suggest, the possessive is most commonly used to show ownership or possession.

For example:

Ralph's car

My family's house

→→ However, the possessive is used in many other meanings, the two most important being **relationships and measurement**:

Relationships

Ralph's neighbor (Ralph does not own his neighbor.)

My family's doctor (The family does not own the doctor.)

Measurement

Time: *an hour's delay; a week's postponement; two years' duration*

Value: *the euro's value; the dollar's decline; five dollars' worth*

of Possessive

While the inflectional possessive and the *of possessive* mean the same thing, they are not always interchangeable. For example:

Inflectional possessive: *Sarah's taxi*

of possessive: *X ~~the taxi of Sarah~~*

Inflectional possessive: *X ~~a soup's bowl~~*

of possessive: *a bowl of soup*

Let us use the term possessive noun to refer to both (a) nouns that can have inflectional possessive 's or s', and (b) nouns that follow of. In the first of the preceding examples, the possessive noun would be Sarah. In the second example, the possessive noun would be soup.

→→→ Here is a general rule that will help you decide which form of the possessive noun to use:
If the possessive noun is animate, use the inflectional possessive.
If the possessive noun is inanimate, use the **of possessive**.

Here are some examples with **animate possessive** nouns:

Inflectional

The gentleman's hat

The cat's dish

Our family's house

of Possessive

X? ~~The hat of the gentleman~~

X ~~the dish of the cat~~

X ~~the house of our family~~

Here are some examples with **inanimate possessive** nouns:

of Possessive

A map of Australia

A glass of water

The back of the room

Inflectional

X? ~~Australia's map~~

X ~~water's glass~~

X ~~the room's back~~

→→→ As with most broad generalizations, the rule about possessives is overly black-and-white. The first part, which says that animate nouns require the inflectional possessive, does seem to hold true. The real problem is with the second part, which says that inanimate nouns use only the **of possessive**.

We can (but do not have to) use the inflectional possessive with the following types of inanimate nouns:

Inanimate possessive nouns that are **a product of human creation**. For example:

Inflectional

The economy's growth

The performance's success

of Possessive

the growth of the economy

the success of the performance

The game's rules

the rules of the game

Natural phenomena. For example:

Inflectional

The storm's damage

The tide's surge

The sun's glare

The earth's climate

of Possessive

the damage of the storm

the surge of the tide

the glare of the sun

the climate of the earth

Possessive nouns that express **location** or **time**. For example:

Inflectional

the city's population

the river's bank

this year's profits

today's lesson

of Possessive

the population of the city

the bank of the river

the profits of this year

the lesson of today

When the inflectional and of possessive forms are both grammatical, there are still stylistic differences between them.

In general, the inflectional forms are somewhat less formal, and the of possessive forms are more formal. For example, if you were writing a report, you would probably choose *the population of the city* rather than *the city's population* as the title of a section.

Everything else being equal, the inflectional possessive implies **shared or previous knowledge**, while the **of possessive** does not. For example, compare the following:

Inflectional: We met Jim's friend last night.

of possessive: We met a friend of Jim's last night.

The inflectional sentence implies that the listener already knows who Jim's friend is. The **of possessive** sentence implies that the listener is not expected to know who Jim's friend is.

→→→ Double Possessive:

We use a special form of the possessive when the possessive noun is a personal pronoun or an animate noun. This construction is sometimes called a double possessive or double genitive. The pronoun or animate noun is itself used in the possessive form.

If the possessive is a pronoun, the pronoun must be in the possessive pronoun form (as opposed to the possessive adjective form). For example, compare the following possessive nouns:

In object form: X ~~He is a friend of me.~~

In possessive adjective form: X ~~He is a friend of my.~~

In possessive pronoun form: ✓ He is a friend of mine.

→→→ If the possessive noun is an **animate noun** (most commonly a proper noun), we have the **option of using the possessive form or not**. For example:

He is a friend of Sam.

He is a friend of Sam's.

He was a contemporary of Mozart.

He was a contemporary of Mozart's.

It is a policy of the company.

It is a policy of the company's.

➔➔ **Formation of Nouns:** Nouns take characteristic **inflectional endings** to form plurals and possessives:

Singular: Bell, cargo, city, fiesta, knife

Plural: Bells, cargoes, cities, fiestas, knives

Possessive: Bell's, cargo's, city's, fiesta's, knife's

➔➔ They also have characteristic **derivational endings**:

White + ness = whiteness

Natural + ist = naturalist

Play + er = player

Music + ian = musician

➔➔➔ **Nouns Derived from Verbs**

Store	-age	storage
Accept	-ance	acceptance
insist	-ence	insistence
agree	-ment	agreement
authorize	-sion/-tion	authorization

Nouns Derived from Adjectives

Convenient	-ce	convenience
Redundant	-cy	redundancy
opposite	-tion	opposition
soft	-ness	softness
durable	-ty	durability

➔➔➔ **Common noun making suffixes:**

-ary	secretary
-ry	dentistry
-ity	simplicity
-an	Iranian
	republican
	vegetarian

-cy	infancy
-ist	chemist
-ism	heroism
-ure	mixture
-tude	solitude
	attitude
-ice	justice
	service
-dom	kingdom
	freedom
-ling	duckling → late developer/bloomer
-hood	boyhood= childhood
womanhood	

ایام بچگی

---The novel deals with a teenage girl's journey towards womanhood.

---Brigitte Bardot was the dominant image of womanhood in French cinema during the 1960s.

-ship	friendship
-or	actor
-er	teacher
-ess	princess
	actress
	lioness

→→→Compound Nouns

Formation

Words can be combined to form **compound nouns**. These are very common, and new combinations are invented almost daily. They normally have two parts. The **second part** identifies the object or *person in question* (**man, friend, tank, table, room**). The **first part** tells us what kind of object or person it is, or what its purpose is (**police, boy, water, dining, and bed**):

What type / what purpose what or who

Police man, Boy friend, Water tank, Dining table, Bed room

→→→The two parts may be written in a number of ways:

1. As one word.

Example: Policeman, boyfriend

2. As two words joined with a hyphen.

Example: Dining-table

3. As two separate words.

Example: Fish tank

There are no clear rules about this - so write the common compounds that you know well as one word, and the others as two words.

→→→ The two parts may be:

1. Noun + noun

Bedroom, Water tank, Motorcycle, Printer cartridge

2. Noun + verb

Rainfall, Haircut, Train-spotting = the hobby of observing trains and recording locomotive numbers

3. Noun + adverb

Hanger-on, Passer-by

4. Verb + noun

Washing machine, Driving license, Swimming pool

5. Verb + adverb[↓]

Lookout, Take-off, Drawback

6. Adjective + noun

Greenhouse, Software, Redhead -> green house 1. ... 2. ...

7. Adjective + verb

Dry-cleaning, Public speaking

8. Adverb + noun

Onlooker, Bystander

9. Adverb + verb[↓]

Output, Overthrow, Upturn, Input

→→→ Many common compound nouns are formed from phrasal verbs (verb+ adverb or adverb + verb).

Examples: breakdown, outbreak, outcome, cutback, drive-in, drop-out, feedback, flyover, hold-up, hangover, outlay, outlet, inlet, makeup, output, set-back, stand-in, takeaway, walkover.

Tests:

- 1- The police a noteworthy investigation into the causes of the last attempts to assassinate the P.M.
 - a. is conducting
 - b. have been conducted
 - c. are conducting
 - d. was conducting
 - e. has been conducting
- 2- Mumps a disease with painful swelling in the neck.
 - a. are
 - b. have been
 - c. were
 - d. is
 - e. will be
- 3- Did you hear the news thattoday on BBC at 8 o'clock? It was really devastating for me.
 - a. have broadcast
 - b. were broadcast
 - c. will be broadcast
 - d. was broadcast
 - e. has broadcast
- 4- The estimated number of children born annually with major congenital malformations to be 3 million.

- a. are reported
- b. have been announced
- c. will declare
- d. are to report
- e. has been reported

5- The number of payphones from less than 500 to nearly 7000 covering virtually all urban, rural and market centers in the last two months.

- a. have increased
- b. will increase
- c. was increasing
- d. has increased
- e. are increasing

6- When the militarycontrol in a country, democracy can not be mentioned any longer.

- a. is taking
- b. have taken
- c. are taken
- d. was taking
- e. has taken

7- Phonetics the study of speech sounds and their production.

- a. are
- b. has been
- c. is
- d. was
- e. have been

8- We are really happy to hear that the acoustics of the hall we are going to hold our conference inexcellent.

- a. has been
- b. were
- c. is
- d. have been
- e. is to be

Tests: Peterson's Success

1. The male mandril baboon is one of the most colorful of all mammal.

A B C D

2. Zoonoses are diseases that can be transmitted to humans beings by animals.

A B C D

3. Many championship automobiles and motorcycle races take place in Daytona

A B C D

Beach, Florida.

4. The Newberry Award is granted every years to the authors of outstanding books
 A B C
 for children.
 D
5. The major source of air pollution vary from city to city.
 A B C D
6. Around 75 percents of the earth's surface is covered by water.
 A B C D
7. All college and universities get their funds from a variety of sources.
 A B C D
8. Russell Cave in northeastern Alabama was the home of cliff-dwelling Indians
 A B
thousand of years ago.
 C D
9. The Federalist Papers are a 500-pages collection of eighteenth century
 A B
newspaper articles written to support the Constitution.
 C D
10. The mathematician and astronomer David Rittenhouse was one of the first
 A B
man of science in the American colonies.
 C D
11. Insurance underwriter insure people against many types of risks.
 A B C D
12. The electric toaster was one of the earliest appliance to be developed for the
 A B C
kitchen.
 D
13. Tornadoes can pick up objects as heavy as automobiles and carry them for
 A B
hundreds of foot.
 C D
14. Many kinds of vegetables are growth in California's Imperial Valley.
 A B C D

15. Few of the doctors practicing in the thirteen North American colonies had
 A B
 formal training in the field of medicines.
 C D

16. The pine tree is probably the more important lumber tree in
 A B C D
 the world.

17. Lactose, a sugar present in milk, is one of simple sugars used
 A B C D
 in food preparations for infants.

1. mammals
2. human
3. automobile
4. year
5. sources
6. percent
7. all colleges
8. thousands
9. 500-page
10. men
11. underwriters
12. appliances
13. feet
14. grown
15. medicine
16. most
17. the

Verbs:

Verbs name an action or describe a state of being. Every sentence must have a verb. There are three basic types of verbs: 1. *action verbs*, 2. *linking verbs*, and 3. *helping verbs*.

1. Action Verbs

Action verbs tell what the subject does. The action can be visible (*jump, cry, laugh*) or mental (*think, learn, study*).

---The cat *broke* Louise's china.

---Louise *considered* buying a new china cabinet.

---Harold *drove* all the way to Toronto. (*Drove* shows action)

---Harold *slept* all the way to Toronto. (*Slept* shows action)

An action verb can be *transitive* or *intransitive*. *Transitive verbs* need a direct object.

---The boss *dropped* the ball.

---The workers *picked* it up.

Intransitive verbs do not need a direct object.

---Who *called*?

---The temperature *fell* over night.

Quick Tip

To determine if a verb is transitive, ask yourself "Who?" or "What?" after the verb. If you can find an answer in the sentence, the verb is transitive.

2. Linking Verbs

Linking verbs join the subject and the predicate. They do not show action. Instead, they help the words at the end of the sentence name or describe the subject.

→→→The following verbs are *true* linking verbs: any form of the verb 'be' [*am, is, are, was, were, has been, are being, might have been*, etc.], become, and seem. These true linking verbs are *always* linking verbs.

→→→Then you have a list of verbs with multiple personalities: appear, feel, grow, look, prove, remain, smell, sound, taste, and turn. Sometimes these verbs are linking verbs; sometimes they are action verbs. Their function in every individual sentence determines what you call them.

---Harold *seemed* happy in Toronto. (*Seemed* shows state of being)

---Harold *was* happy in Toronto. (*Was* shows state of being)

---Kaila *is* a **shopaholic**.

---After drinking the old milk, Vladimir *turned* green.

3. Helping Verbs

Helping verbs are added to another verb to make the meaning clearer. Helping verbs include any form of *to be, do, does, did, have, has, had, shall, should, will, would, can, could, may, might, must*. *Verb phrases* are made up of one main verb and one or more helping verbs.

---They *will run* before dawn.

---They *have not yet found* a smooth track.

➔➔ All verbs, whether regular or irregular, have five forms [often called principal parts]. These forms are the infinitive, simple present, simple past, past participle, and present participle.

Infinitive	Simple Present	Simple Past	Past Participle	Present Participle
To laugh	laugh(s)	laughed	laughed	laughing
To start	start(s)	started	started	starting
To wash	wash(es)	washed	washed	washing
To wink	wink(s)	winked	winked	winking

Irregular verbs:

Verbs, the three parts of which, are the same:

broadcast	پخش کردن (رادیو)	broadcast	broadcast
-> Multicast/anycast/unicast			
cost	قیمت داشتن، ارزیدن	cost	cost
cut	بریدن	cut	cut
forecast	پیش بینی کردن	forecast	forecast
hit	زدن	hit	hit
hurt	آسیب رساندن، صدمه زدن	hurt	hurt
let	اجازه دادن	let	let
put	گذاشتن، قراردادن	put	put
read	خواندن	read	read
set	غروب کردن، تنظیم کردن	set	set
upset	آشفتن، واژگون کردن	upset	upset
shut	بستن	shut	shut
spread	پراکندن	spread	spread

The verbs whose past and past participle are the same:

Bend	خم کردن	bent	bent
Bleed	خونریزی کردن	bled	bled
Bring	آوردن	brought	brought
Build	ساختن	built	built
Buy	خریدن	bought	bought
Burn	سوختن، سوزاندن	burnt, burned	burnt, burned
Catch	گرفتن	caught	caught
Dream	خواب دیدن	dreamt, dreamed	dreamt, dreamed
Dig	کندن	dug	dug
Feed	غذا دادن	fed	fed
Feel	احساس کردن	felt	felt
Fight	جنگیدن	fought	fought
Find	پیدا کردن	found	found
Forget	فراموش کردن	forgot	forgotten
Get	گرفتن	got	got
Hang	قطع کردن گوشي، آویزان کردن	hung, hanged	hung, hanged
Have	داشتن، خوردن	had	had
Hold	نگه داشتن	held	held
Keep	نگهداشتن	kept	kept
Lay	قراردادن	laid	laid

Lead	هدايت کردن	led	led
Lean	خم کردن/شدن	leaned, leant	leaned, leant
Learn	يادگرفتن	learned, learnt	learned, learnt
Leave	ترك کردن	left	left
Lend	قرض دادن	lent	lent
Light	روشن کردن	lit	lit
Lose	گم کردن، از دست داد	lost	lost
Make	ساختن، مجبور کردن	made	made
Mean	معنا دادن	meant	meant
Meet	ملاقات کردن	met	met
Misunderstand	بد فهمیدن	misunderstood	misunderstood
Pay	پرداختن	paid	paid
Sell	فروختن	sold	sold
Send	فرستادن	sent	sent
Sleep	خوابیدن	slept	slept
Smell	بوییدن	smelled, smelt	smelled, smelt
Spell	هجي کردن	spelt, spelled	spelt, spelled
Spend	گذراندن، صرف کردن	spent	spent
Say	گفتن	said	said
Shine	درخشیدن	shone	shone
Shoot	شليك کردن	shot	shot
Sit	نشستن	sat	sat
Stand	ايستادن	stood	stood
Stick	چسبیدن	stuck	stuck
Think	فكر کردن	thought	thought
Teach	درس دادن	taught	taught
Tell	گفتن	told	told
Understand	فهمیدن	understood	understood
Win	بردن	won	won

The verbs whose three parts are different:

Arise	اتفاق افتادن، حادث شدن	arose	arisen
Bear	تحمل کردن	bore	borne
Become	شدن	became	become
Break	شكستن	broke	broken
Choose	انتخاب کردن	chose	chosen
Come	آمدن	came	come
Do	انجام دادن	did	done

Draw	نقاشي کشیدن	drew	drawn
Drive	رانندگی کردن	drove	driven
Fly	پرواز کردن	flew	flown
Go	رفتن	went	gone
Grow	رویدن، رشد کردن	grew	grown
Know	دانستن، شناختن	knew	known
Overcome	غلبه کردن	overcame	overcome
Ride	راندن (موتور، دوچرخه و...)	rode	ridden
Rise	بالا آمدن	rose	risen
Ring	زنگ زدن	rang	rung
Sing	آواز خواندن	sang	sung
Steal	دزدیدن	stole	stolen
Tear	پاره کردن	tore	torn
Wake	بیدار کردن	woke	woken
Wear	پوشیدن، برتن داشتن	wore	worn
Write	نوشتن	wrote	written

→→→ Valency:

The number of arguments that a verb takes is called its *valency* or *valence*. Verbs can be classified according to their valency:

Intransitive (valency = 1): the verb only has a subject. For example:

---"He runs",

---"It falls",

---The stone moved.

Transitive (valency = 2): the verb has a subject and a direct object. For example:

---"She eats fish",

---"We hunt rabbits",

---John moved the stone.

Ditransitive (valency = 3): the verb has a subject, a direct object and an indirect or secondary object. For example:

---"I gave her a book."

---"She sent me flowers."

---She was given a book.

---John gave Bill the book.

➔➔➔ Some verbs are followed by two objects. Usually the first object is a person (or group of people) and the second object is a thing:

---Can you bring me (= object 1) some milk (= object 2) from the shops?

---I made him (= object 1) a cup of coffee. (= object 2)

With many verbs that can have two objects, we can reverse the order of the objects if we put for or to before object 1 (this is then called a prepositional object). Compare:

---They built us a new house.

---They built a new house for us.

---Can you give me that bandage?

---Can you give that bandage to me?

➔➔➔➔ We often use this pattern if we want to focus particular attention on the object after for/to. We also use it if object 1 is a lot longer than object 2:

---Jasmin taught music to a large number of children at the school, {not Jasmin taught a large number of children at the school music.)

---Judith booked theatre tickets for all the students who were doing her Shakespeare course.

(Not Judith booked all the students who were doing her Shakespeare course theatre tickets.)

➔➔➔➔ We use for + object with verbs such as book, build, buy, catch, choose, cook, fetch, find, make, order, pour, save.

We use to + object with verbs such as award, give, hand, lend, offer, owe, pass, show, teach, tell, throw, play, post.

With some other verbs we can use either to or for, including bring, leave, pay, read, send, sing, take, write. Sometimes there is very little difference in meaning:

---He played the piece of music to (or for) me.

---Can you sing that song again to (or for) us.

Often, however, there is a difference. Compare:

---I took some apples to my sister.

---Ann didn't have time to take her library books back, so I took them for her.

➔➔➔➔ «A few other verbs that are followed by two objects cannot have their objects reversed with for/to:

---We all envied him his lifestyle, (but not we all envied his lifestyle for/to him.)

Other verbs like this include allow, ask, cost, deny, forgive, guarantee, permit, refuse.

Some verbs can only have a second object if this is a prepositional object with to:

✓---They explained the procedure.

✗---They explained me the procedure.

➔You cannot say 'explain me, him, her, etc.'

✓---Can you explain the situation to me?

✗---Can you explain me the situation?

✗---I'll explain you why I like it.

✓---They explained the procedure to me.

✓---The suspect confessed his crime.

✗---The suspect confessed the police his crime.

✓---The suspect confessed his crime to the police.

Other verbs like this include admit, announce, demonstrate, describe, introduce, mention, point out, prove, report, say, suggest.

The verbs collect, mend and raise can only have a second object if this is a prepositional object with for:

---He raised a lot of money for charity. (not He raised charity a lot of money.)

TOEFL: Agreement: Modified Subject and Verb

In all patterns, there must be agreement of subject and verb.

➔➔➔ Avoid using a verb that agrees with the modifier of a subject instead of with the subject itself.

✗---His knowledge of languages and international relations aid him in his work.

✓---His knowledge of languages and international relations aids him in his work.

✗---The facilities at the new research library, including an excellent microfilm file, is among the best in the country.

✓---The facilities at the new research library, including an excellent microfilm file, are among the best in the country.

✗---The production of different kinds of artificial materials are essential to the conservation of our natural resources.

✓---The production of different kinds of artificial materials is essential to the conservation of our natural resources.

✗---Since the shipment of supplies for our experiments were delayed, we will have to reschedule our work.

✓---Since the shipment of supplies for our experiments was delayed, we will have to reschedule our work.

✗---A selection of these were published last year.

✓---A selection of these was published last year.

Tests: Groups of tissues, each with its own function,.....in the human body.

(A) it makes up the organs

(B) make up the organs

(C) they make up the organs

(D) makes up the organs

The Zoning Improvement Plan, better known as zip codes, enable postal clerks to speed the routing of an ever-increasing volume of mail.

TOEFL: One of

1. One of + ق ش ج + singular verb

---One of my books is missing.

2. The only one of + ق ش ج + wh ضمير موصولی + singular verb

---He is the only one of those men who likes to drive fast.

3. One of + ق ش ج + ضمير موصولی + plural verb

---He is one of those men who like to drive fast.

4. One of the many + اسم جمع + ضمير موصولی + plural verb

---He is one of the many students who are depressed.

او یکی از دانشجویان زیادی است...

TOEFL: Agreement-Subject with Appositive and Verb

Remember that there must be agreement of subject and verb. An appositive is a word or phrase that follows a noun and defines it. An appositive usually has a comma before it and a comma after it.

➡➡➡ In all patterns, avoid using a verb that agrees with words in the appositive after a subject instead of with the subject itself.

✗---The books, an English dictionary and a chemistry text, was on the shelf yesterday.

✓---The books, an English dictionary and a chemistry text, were on the shelf yesterday.

✗---Three swimmers from our team, Paul, Ed, and Jim, is in competition for medals.

✓---Three swimmers from our team, Paul, Ed, and Jim, are in competition for medals.

✗---Several pets, two dogs and a cat, needs to be taken care of while we are gone.

✓---Several pets, two dogs and a cat, need to be taken care of while we are gone.

✗---State University, the largest of the state-supported schools, have more than 50,000 students on main campus.

✓---State University, the largest of the state-supported schools, has more than 50,000 students on main campus.

Tests: Cupid, one of the ancient Roman gods,.....

- (A) were a little winged child
- (B) representing as a little winged child
- (C) was represented as a little winged child
- (D) a little winged child

Columbus, Ohio, the capital of the state, are not only the largest city in Ohio but also a typical metropolitan area, often used in market research.

TOEFL: Verbs that Require an Infinitive in the Complement

Agree	decide	hesitate	need	refuse
Appear	demand	hope	offer	seem
Arrange	deserve	intend	plan	tend
Ask	expect	learn	prepare	hearten
Claim	fail	manage	pretend	wait
Consent	forget	mean	promise	want

Avoid using an -ing form after the verbs listed. Avoid using a verb word after want.

✗---He wanted speak with Mr. Brown.

✓---He wanted to speak with Mr. Brown.

✗---We demand knowing our status.

✓---We demand to know our status.

✗---I intend the inform you that we cannot approve your application.

✓---I intend to inform you that we cannot approve your application.

✗---They didn't plan buying a car.

✓---They didn't plan to buy a car.

✗---The weather tends improving in May.

✓---The weather tends to improve in May.

Tests: One of the least effective ways of storing information is learning.....it.

(A) how repeat

(B) repeating

(C) to repeat

(D) repeat

Representative democracy *seemed* evolve simultaneously during the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries in Britain, Europe, and the United States.

TOEFL: Verbs that Require an -ing Form in the Complement

<i>Admit</i>	<i>enjoy</i>	<i>recall</i>
<i>Appreciate</i>	<i>finish</i>	<i>recommend</i>
<i>Avoid</i>	<i>keep</i>	<u><i>regret</i></u>
<i>Complete</i>	<i>mention</i>	<i>risk</i>
<i>Consider</i>	<i>miss</i>	<u><i>stop</i></u>
<i>Delay</i>	<i>postpone</i>	<i>suggest</i>
<i>Deny</i>	<i>practice</i>	<i>tolerate</i>
<i>Discuss</i>	<i>quit</i>	<i>understand</i>

Avoid using an infinitive after the verbs listed.

➔➔ *Forbid* may be used with either an infinitive or an *-ing* complement, but *forbid from* is not idiomatic.

✗---She is considering not to go.

✓---She is considering not going.

✗---We enjoyed talk with your friend.

✓---We enjoyed talking with your friend.

✗---Hank completed the writing his thesis this summer.

✓---Hank completed writing his thesis this summer.

✗---I miss to watch the news when I am traveling.

✓---I miss watching the news when I am traveling.

✗---She mentions stop at El Paso in her letter.

✓---She mentions stopping at El Paso in her letter.

Tests: Strauss finished.....two of his published compositions before his tenth birthday.

(A) written

(B) write

(C) to write

(D) writing

Many people have stopped to smoke because they are afraid that it may be harmful to their health.

TOEFL: Verb Phrases that Require an -ing Form in the Complement

Approve of *do not mind* *keep on*

Be better off *forget about* *look forward to*

Can't help *get through* *object to*

Count on *insist on* *think about*

Think of

➔➔➔ Avoid using an infinitive after the verb phrases listed. Avoid using a verb word after look forward *to* and object *to*.

➔➔➔ Remember that the verb phrase BE *likely* does not require an *-ing* form but requires an infinitive in the complement.

✗---She is likely knowing.

✓---She is likely to know.

✗---Let's go to the movie when you get through to study.

✓---Let's go to the movie when you get through studying.

✗---We can't help to wonder why she left.

✓---We can't help wondering why she left.

✗---I have been looking forward to meet you.

✓---I have been looking forward to meeting you.

✗---We wouldn't mind to wait.

✓---We wouldn't mind waiting.

Tests: Many modern architects insist on.....materials native to the region that will blend into the surrounding landscape.

(A) use

(B) to use

(C) the use

(D) using

During Jackson's administration, those who did not approve of permit common people in the White House were shocked by the president's insistence that they be invited into the mansion.

TOEFL: Transitive and Intransitive Verbs: Lay and Lie

Remember that *lay* is a transitive verb; it takes a complement. *Lie* is an intransitive verb; it does not take a complement.

Transitive			Intransitive		
Verb word	Past	Participle	Verb word	Past	Participle
Lay	laid	laid	Lie	lay	lain

Remember that to **lay** means to put, to place, or to cause to **lie**. **To lie** means to recline or to occupy a place. The past form of the verb to **lie** is **lay**.

✓---The postman *lays* the mail on the table every day.

✓---The postman *laid* the mail on the table yesterday.

✓---He lies on the sofa to rest every day after work.

✓---He lay on the sofa to rest yesterday after work.

✗---Her coat was laying on the chair.

✓---Her coat was *lying* on the chair.

✗---I have lain your notebook on the table by the door so that you won't forget it.
 ✓---I have *laid* your notebook on the table by the door so that you won't forget it.

✗---Key West lays off the coast of Florida.
 ✓---Key West *lies* off the coast of Florida.

✗---Why don't you lay down for awhile?
 ✓---Why don't you *lie down* for awhile?

✗---Linda always forgets where she lies her glasses.
 ✓---Linda always forgets where she *lays* her glasses.

✓---The university *lies in* the western section of town.

✓---Don't disturb Mary, she has *laid down* for a rest.

Tests: The geographic position of North America,.....in the early days of the European settlement.
 (A) laying between the Atlantic and the Pacific Oceans, isolating it
 (B) isolating it as it laid between the Atlantic and the Pacific Oceans
 (C) lying between the Atlantic and the Pacific Oceans, isolated it
 (D) isolating it between the Atlantic and the Pacific Oceans as it was layed

Melanin, a pigment that lays under the skin, is responsible for skin color, including the variations that occur among different races.

Two word verbs

افعالی هستند که از دو جز تشکیل شده‌اند و به دو نوع تقسیم می‌شوند:

1. Seperable

2. Inseperable

۱- افعال جدانشدنی که از ساختار زیر تشکیل شده است:

حرف اضافه + فعل

افعالی هستند که در جمله، مفعول می‌تواند هم بین دو جزء فعل و هم بعد از دو جزء فعل بیاید اما چنانچه مفعول جمله ضمیر مفعولی باشد حتماً بین دو قسمت فعل می‌آید.

---Please *take* your shoes *off*.

---Please *take off* your shoes.

---Please *take them off*.

x---Please take off *them*.

غلط

آوردن ضمیر مفعولی بعد از افعال دوکلمه ای جداشتنی نادرست است.

افعال دو کلمه‌ای جداشتنی

call up	تلفن کردن	carry out	انجام دادن
carry on	ادامه دادن	find out	تشخیص دادن/فهمیدن
give up	دست کشیدن	give back	برگرداندن/پس دادن
pick up	برداشتن	put away	کنار گذاشتن
pay back	پس دادن	put off	به تعویق انداختن
put on	پوشیدن	take off	در آوردن لباس، بلند شدن هواپیما از زمین
turn off	خاموش کردن	look up	پیدا کردن لغت (درفر هنگ لغت)
turn on	روشن کردن	turn down	کم کردن صدا
throw away	دور انداختن	wake up	بیدار کردن/ شدن
write down	یادداشت کردن		

۱- افعال دو کلمه ای جداشتنی که از ساختار زیر تشکیل شده است:

حرف اضافه + فعل

در افعال دو کلمه‌ای جداشتنی مفعول یا ضمیر مفعولی فقط بعد از حرف اضافه می‌آید و به هیچ عنوان مابین دو جزء قرار نمی‌گیرد.

---I am **looking for** my bag.

---I am **looking for it**.

همان طور که می بینید ضمیر مفعولی بعد از افعال جداشتنی استفاده می شود.

در جمله بالا فعل دو کلمه‌ای از فعل و حرف اضافه تشکیل شده است.

تعدادی از افعال دو کلمه‌ای جداشتنی

ask for	پرسیدن	talk about	صحبت کردن درباره
talk with/to	صحبت کردن با	think about	فکر کردن درباره
keep on	ادامه دادن	look after	مراقبت کردن

look at	نگاه کردن به	get off	پایاده شدن
look for	جستجو کردن	Get on	سوار شدن
listen to	گوش دادن به	depend on	بستگی داشتن (به)
Pay for	پرداختن	succeed in	موفق شدن (در)
search for	جستجو کردن	wait for	منتظر ماندن (برای)

صفات با حروف اضافه: بعضی از صفات نیز حرف اضافه مخصوص دارند. توجه داشته باشید که کلیه صفات با حروف اضافه، جد/نشدنی هستند.

---She is **interested in** the Math.

---Ahmad is **similar to** his father.

بعضی از صفات با حروف اضافه مخصوص به کار می روند. سعی کنید حرف اضافه آنها را به خاطر بسپارید.

be absent from	غایب بودن از	be afraid of	ترسیدن از
be interested in	علاقمند بودن به	be responsible for	مسئول ... بودن
be similar to	شبيه بودن به	be accustomed to	عادت داشتن به
be sorry about	متاسف بودن درباره	be acquainted with	آشنا بودن با
be addicted to	معتادبودن به	be angry at/with	ناراحت بودن از
be annoyed with/by	ناراحت بودن از	be aware of	آگاه بودن از
be associated with	معاشرت کردن با	be bored with/by	کسل/خسته بودن از
be capable of	قابل ... بودن	be compose of	تشکیل شدن از
be concerned about	نگران بودن درمورد	be connected to	متصل بودن به
be content with	راضی بودن از	be convinced of	مطمئن بودن از
be disappointed in/with	ناامید بودن از	be dedicated to	وقف/مختص/ارادتمند بودن
be engaged in	درگیربودن در	be jealous of	نسبت به کسی حسادت کردن

be fond of مشتاق/عاشق ... بودن	be grateful to/for سپاسگزاربودن
be friendly to/with دوست/سازگاربودن با	be frightened of/by ترسیدن از
be familiar with آشنابودن با	be guilty of متهم بودن
be located in واقع شدن در	be made of/from ساخته شدن از
be married to همسر... بودن	be opposed to مخالف بودن
be patient with صبوربودن	be pleased with خوشحال بودن از
be polite to مودب بودن	be proud of مفتخر/مغرور بودن (نسبت به...)
be related to مربوط بودن به	be relevant to مربوط به
be satisfied with راضی بودن از	be tired of/from خسته بودن از
be worried about نگران بودن	be upset with نگران/مضطرب بودن

معمولا افعالی که جزء دوم آنها down, off, back, away, on, out, up باشند افعال دو کلمه‌ای جداشدنی هستند.

افعالی که حروف اضافه from, in, to, for, at, with, of دارند جداشدنی هستند.

نکته: دراین تست ها به مفرد وجمع، قابل شمارش یا غیرقابل شمارش بودن اسم ها نیز توجه کنید.

"Did he give back your money?" Yes, he

- a. give them back b. give it back c. give back it d. give back them

چون money غیرقابل شمارش است و give back هم جزء افعال جداشدنی است پس گزینه b صحیح است.

Tests:

1. "Did Reza put on his new clothes?" " Yes, he put"

1. on them 2. on it 3. them on 4. it on

2. "Did she give back their money?" " Yes, she back."

1. gave it 2. give it 3. give them 4. gave them

3. He is sorry about his mistakes. He is sorry

1. about them 2. about it 3. them about 4. it about

4. "Are they speaking to the men?" "Yes, they are speaking"

1. them to 2. to them 3. him to 4. to him

5. The TV is on, and I am going to study. Please

1. turn off them 2. turn off it 3. turn them off 4. turn it off

6. "Does she put on her new dress?" " Yes, she"

1. put them on 2. puts it on 3. put it on 4. puts them on

7. He insisted coming to the party.

1. in 2. on 3. to 4. at

8. We are tired working hard.

1. of 2. in 3. on 4. at

9. I've looked my pen everywhere but I cannot find it.

1. after 2. for 3. on 3. out

10. We looked the lost boy. Finally we found him.

1. at 2. like 3. for 4. after

11. He's waiting Ahmad to ask him whether he got the job or not.

1. about 2. at 3. for 4. of

12. "Did you take off your shoes before going to mosque?" "Yes, I....."

1. took them off 2. take it off 3. take off them 4. took it off

13. Here are your shoes. You can put on.

1. it 2. them 3. they 4. this

14. Mr. Farhadi described

1. the photo us 2. us to the photo 3. the photo to us 4. to us the photo

15. I need to have your address; please write

1. down it for me 2. it for me down 3. it down for me 4. down for me it

16. The result of the experiment will depend how careful the students are.

1. to 2. on 3. with 4. over

17. Put your Jacket if you are going out in this weather.

1. off 2. on 3. up 4. out

18. Minoo said, "I like history. It's very interesting. "I think she is interested history .

1. to 2. of 3. at 4. in

19. How much did you pay this book?

1. with 2. for 3. on 4. upon

20. This is the pair of shoes which I have to.....to Diane.

1. give back
3. give them back

2. give it back
4. give back them

Let & make:

Subject + let/make + object + verb without to

---They didn't let him go out.

---They made us leave the room.

Subject + help + object + verb with/without to

---She helped me finish my homework.
to finish

---The teacher helped the students pass their examination.

➔➔ If make is in passive voice, infinitive with to is used:

---The students were made to give a lecture.

---The enemy was made to leave our country.

➔➔➔ The modals have to, must, can, could, will, would, should, may, might are followed by infinitive without to.

---She can speak French.

---We must obey the law.

---You should study hard to night.

---They may lose their way.

---Mary has to finish her homework.

---They will go to shop tomorrow.

➔➔ After verbs of the senses feel, listen, watch, notice, hear, see both infinitive without to or Ving are possible:

---I saw him lock the door.

---She saw him walking along the street.

---I watch the planes take off every morning.

---I noticed him reading the magazine in the library.

➔➔➔➔ After find and smell **Ving** is used:

---Can you smell something burning.

---I found him reading a book.

Expressing percentages:

If a percentage is used with an uncountable or a singular noun the verb is generally singular:

---90% of the land is cultivated.

If the noun is singular but represents a group of people, the verb is singular in AmE but in BrE it may be singular or plural:

---Eighty per cent of the work force is/are against the strike.

If the noun is plural, the verb is plural:

---65% of children play computer games.

Each & Every:

The adjective EACH is always followed by a singular noun: each person; each book.

➔➔➔➔ When the adjective follows a plural subject, the verb agrees with the subject:

---They each dress in different styles.

---The houses each have central heating.

➔➔➔➔ When the pronoun EACH comes immediately before the verb, it always takes a singular verb:

---Each comes (not *come*) from a different country.

➔➔➔➔ When the pronoun is followed by an *of* phrase containing a plural noun or pronoun, both singular and plural verb forms can be used. Some usage guides maintain that only the singular verb is correct, but plural verbs occur frequently even in edited writing.

---Each of the candidates has (or have) spoken on the issue.

➔➔➔➔ It is also sometimes said that the pronoun EACH must always be referred to by a singular

pronoun, but again actual usage does not regularly observe this structure:

---Each member of our garden club had their own special interests.

➡➡➡➡ In the most formal speech and writing, singular verbs and pronouns occur more frequently than plural:

---Each member ... had his own special interests.

The use of plural forms, especially plural pronouns, has been increasing in the United States, partially because of the desire to avoid using *he* or *his* to refer to a female.

ANYONE, ANYBODY, EVERYONE, EVERYBODY, NO ONE, SOMEONE, and SOMEBODY follow the same general patterns of pronoun agreement as EACH.

Long before the use of generic HE was condemned as sexist, the pronouns **THEY**, **THEIR**, and **THEM** were used in educated speech and in all but the most formal writing to refer to indefinite pronouns and to singular nouns of general personal reference, probably because such nouns are often not felt to be exclusively singular:

---If anyone calls, tell them I'll be back at six.

---Everyone began looking for their books at once.

Already widespread in the language (though still rejected as ungrammatical by some), this use of THEY, THEIR, and THEM is increasing in all but the most conservatively edited American English. This increased use is at least partly impelled by the desire to avoid the sexist implications of HE as a pronoun of general reference.

➡➡➡➡

With these verbs, the **meaning doesn't change** whether a **gerund** or an **infinitive** is used:

advise / forbid / allow / like / attempt / prefer / begin / start / continue / dislike
e.g.

---They dislike to work.

---They dislike working.

---They began to make money

---They began making money

Agree to do sth:

---He *agreed to leave* early tomorrow morning.

Agree to one's doing sth:

---He *agreed to my leaving* early tomorrow morning.

Mean to do sth: Intend

---I *mean to get* to the top of the hill before sunrise.

Mean doing sth: Involve

---My new job will mean traveling all over the world.

---Dieting also means being careful about which foods you buy.

If it + mean + verb-ing:

---My neighbor was determined to get a ticket for Saturday's game if it meant standing in line all night.

Propose to do sth: to intend to do something

---How does he propose to deal with the situation?

---I *propose to start* tomorrow.

Propose doing sth: 1. to intend to do something 2. to suggest sth

¹---We still don't know how the company *proposes raising* the money.

²---He *proposed dealing* directly with the suppliers.

Go on doing sth: Continue doing sth

---He went on writing after a break.

Go on to do sth: Finish one action and start another

---He showed the island on the map then went on to tell about its climate.

Try to do sth: Make an effort to do sth

---He tried to solve this math problem.

Try doing sth: Examine sth to see the result

---I tried sending her flowers, writing her letters, giving her presents, but she still wouldn't speak to me.

Stop to do sth: Stop an action and start another

---He stopped *to talk* to the manager.

Stop doing sth: Stop doing sth

---He stopped *talking* to the manager.

Regret to say/inform/tell: Used before giving bad news

---I regret to inform you that your contract will not be renewed.

---I regret to tell you that you failed the exam.

Regret doing sth: Used when you wish you had not done sth

---He regrets telling you that you failed the exam.

Tests: My teaching job last winter was not good. I regret.....harder to help my student.

A) not tried

B) had tried

C) not having tried

D) not have tried

Forget/Remember doing sth: To (not) recall an action

---"I forgot locking the door" means I did lock the door, then forgot about it.

---I distinctly remember asking them to come after lunch.

---I won't forget seeing David win the gold medal as long as I live.

Forget/Remember to do sth: To (not) do an action you must do.

---I remembered to lock the door. I remembered and locked the door.

---"I forgot to lock the door" means first I forgot, so I didn't lock it.

---He remembered to lock all doors when he went on holiday, but he forgot to close the bathroom window.

Subject + say + (that) + S + V

Subject + tell + indirect object + (that) + S + V

---He *says that* he will be busy tomorrow/ he tell me that....

Tell a story

a joke

a secret

a lie

the truth

(the) time

---The little boy was punished because he *told* his mother *a lie*.

Infinitive after adjectives:

It + is/was + adj. + (for + object) + infinitive with to +...

---It is easy to learn English.

---It is easy for me to learn English.

It + to be + adj. + of + object + infinitive with to + ...

---It is nice of you to help my brother.

It's time:

It's time + infinitive with to + ...

---It's time to buy a new car.

---It's time to finish the class.

It's time + for (noun or object pron.) + infinitive with to +...

---It's time for her to go to bed.

---It's time for Amir to wake up.

It's time + subject + simple past + ...

---It's time she went to bed.

---It's time we went home.

---It's time you washed those trousers.

---I (would) appreciate it if you informed me about the procedure.

Tests:

1. Mina's father hates her in downtown.

1. wandering

2. They finally decided the University Entrance Exam this year.

1. take

3. Will you please help me the door.

1. opening

4. Let's the teacher collect the exam paper.

1. to help

5. We enjoyed to the radio on Friday morning.

1. listen

6. The man at the door watched him the hotel.

1. enter

7. The teacher had to ask the class talking loudly.

1. stop

8. I'm glad to all the rooms have been cleaned.

1. be seen

9. She made the baby before leaving the house.

1. clean

10. The house needs but we have to wait until next summer.

1. to paint

11. I don't want to go to the cinema tonight. I to stay home.

1. consider

12. Did you hear the teacher any instruction yesterday morning?

1. gave

13. I saw a stranger out of the house as soon as the door was opened.

1. going

14. Students are allowed a calculator during their math exams.
1. use
15. The army officer ordered the soldiers the enemy force.
1. attack
16. If you listen more carefully, you'll hear the telephone in the next room.
1. rang
17. A good student is always expected clever and politic.
1. being
18. The teacher noticed Mostafa his homework in the classroom yesterday.
1. did
19. Young people are repeatedly told before talking.
1. to think
20. I can smell something in the kitchen.
1. burn
21. We all agreed to the movies.
1. go
22. My brother and sister both offered the dishes after dinner.
1. to wash
23. You can learn a foreign language by it continuously.
1. studies
24. She made us the room.
1. leave
25. My sister helped me my homework.
1. finishing
26. By hard, you can earn extra money.
1. work
27. Alice helped her the heavy box.
1. lift
28. Parents shouldn't let the little children TV very much.
1. watch
29. By in front of mirror, you can improve your speech.

1. Practicing

30. "What did she do when she discovered his plan?" "She made him"

1. leave

31. Some teachers let the young students around the class when they feel tired.

1. to walk

32. When we passed by the book shop, my son made me him a story book.

1. to buy

33. Involve your audience byquestions.

1. ask

34. Did you see herto the teacher?

1. talking

35. Have you noticed himthe magazine in the yard.

1. to read

36. I found him a book.

1. read

37. I smell something in the kitchen.

1. burns

38. You will be able to pass the test by hard.

1. studying

39. Let's the teacher collect the exam papers.

1. help

40. Will you please help me the door?

1. open

41. When we throw a ball into the air, gravity makes it down.

1. came

42. I noticed that two menthe wall.

1. to climb

43. Students are allowed..... a calculator during their math exams.

1. use

44. Ahmad's mother sometimes lets him his friends to lunch.

1. invite

45. He made Ali..... the dentist.

1. visit

46. Since he was ill during the exams, they let him the English test again.

1. take

47. She said that the letter was personal and wouldn't let me ... it.

1. read

48. A: "What's wrong, Jane?" "B: I want to go sailing but my aunt"

1. won't let me to go

3. will let me to go

49. The enemy was made.....the country.

1. leave

50. All the passengersto leave the airport.

1. made

تست های کاربرد فعل بعد از فعل دیگر

۱-۱

۲-۲

۳-۳

۲-۴

۲-۵

۱-۶

۴-۷

۴-۸

۱-۹

۳-۱۰

۳-۱۱

۲-۱۲

۱-۱۳

۴-۱۴

۴-۱۵

۳-۱۶

۲-۱۷

۳-۱۸

۱-۱۹

۳-۲۰

۳-۲۱

1-۲۲
 ۲-۲۳
 1-۲۴
 ۴-۲۵
 ۲-۲۶
 1-۲۷
 1-۲۸
 1-۲۹
 1-۳۰
 ۴-۳۱
 ۲-۳۲
 ۴-۳۳
 1-۳۴
 1-۳۵
 ۳-۳۶
 ۴-۳۷
 1-۳۸
 1-۳۹
 1-۴۰
 ۲-۴۱
 ۴-۴۲
 ۴-۴۳
 1-۴۴
 1-۴۵
 1-۴۶
 1-۴۷
 ۴-۴۸
 ۴-۴۹
 ۲-۵۰

Tests:

1. It is impossible for a little boya car.
 1. driving 2. drive 3. to drive 4. is driving

2. It isn't safe children in the street.
 1. of-playing 2. of – to play
 3. for-play 4. for-to play

3. It is very important for her exactly as the doctor says.

1. do 2. does 3. doing 4. to do

4. Which item is wrong?

A: "what was the film like?"

a b

B: "It was boring to me to watch that film."

c d

1. a 2. b 3. c 4. d

5. A: "Did John finally decide what to do?" B: "Yes, but"

1. it was a difficult decision for him to make
2. a difficult decision it was to make for him
3. for him it is difficult decision to make
4. for him was a difficult decision to make

6. It is time for me now .

1. left

7. It is necessary for us English perfectly if we want to continue our studies at university.

1. learn

8. It is hard for a child mountains.

1. climbing

9. It is very important for her exactly as the doctor says.

1. do

10. It is sometimes necessary for Peter his parent's car before they give him any pocket money.

1. to clean

11. Do you mind this letter for me?

1. to mail

12. We enjoyedto the radio on Friday morning.

1. listen

13. Please excuse his you so many question.

1. asking

14. Since he has stopped he feels much better.

1. smokes

15. the mountain is not an easy task.

1. Climbed

16. She is tired of to the news.

1. listening

17. The architect admitted the whole building.

1. destroy

18. I generally prefer to stay home and do my homework instead of football.

1. playing

19. "Has he finished the exam papers?" he asked.

1. correct

20. The boy came towards me and asked about the time.

1. run

21. I dislike in one place all day long. It makes me tired.

1. staying

22. It is not unusual to find people to themselves.

1. talk

23. Do you think they will succeed in the work this week?

1. finish

24. computer is necessary today.

1. learns

25. She was looking forwardthe grandchildren again.

1. to seeing 2. to see 3. seeing 4. seen

26. in public places is forbidden.

1. smokes

27. She insisted on there.

1. going

28. Why do you keep on so hard?

1. work

29. What did you do after homework.

1. finish

30. "Is it safe to swim in this part of the river?"

"No, here is dangerous."

1. swimming

31. It is time David smoking.
1. stops
32. You are driving too fast. Would you mind slowly?
1. drive
33. I am opposedmore than two languages at school.
1. to study
34. Many university students look forward to as competent teachers, medical doctors or chemists.
1. work 2. working 3. worked 4. have worked
35. This rice tastes terrible ! We are not..... burned rice.
1. accustomed to eating 2. accustomed to eat
3. accustomed for eating 4. accustomed with eating
36. A lot of young parents look forward to their children walk.
1. see 2. sees 3. seeing 4. saw
37. I am too hungry. Please stop a pizza.
1. eat 2. eating 3. to eat 4. ate
38. He was so rude that I felt likehis stupid face.
1. slapping 2. slap 3. to slap 4. slapped
39. He is too rude. I can't tolerate him. I'm not accustomed..... treated like this.
1. to be 2. being 3. been 4. to being
40. I thanked him for the question.
1. answering
41. I look forward tofrom you.
1. hear 2. heard 3. be hear 4. hearing
42. A lot of people have stoppedand take exercise instead.
1. smoke 2. to smoke 3. smoked 4. smoking
43. I shouldn't have told him the news. I regret him.
1. telling 2. to tell 3. tell 4. told
44. I feel like
1. swim 2. to swim 3. swimming 4. swam
45. she says that she has seen me before, but I don't rememberher.

1. seeing 2. to see 3. saw 4. see

46. I wanted to tell him the news, but he said that I had told him. I had forgotten him the news.

1. tell 2. to tell 3. telling 4. told

47. It's urgent. Don't forget him that we need his help.

1. tell 2. to tell 3. telling 4. told

48. It's worththat you will have to travel quite a lot in this job.

1. to mention 2. mention 3. mentioned 4. mentioning

49. It's awful, but I couldn't helpat her as she fell into the water.

1. laugh 2. laughing 3. laughs 4. laughed

50. I can't help the professional manner in which he dealt with the crisis.

1. admire 2. to admire 3. admired 4. admiring

پاسخ تست های مصدر با to و اسم مصدر gerund

- | | |
|----|---|
| ۱ | 3, مصدر پس از صفت |
| ۲ | 4, مصدر پس از صفت |
| ۳ | 4 |
| ۴ | 3, به جای for از to استفاده شده است. |
| ۵ | 1, رجوع شود به تست 1 |
| ۶ | 3, ساختار it's time |
| ۷ | 3, رجوع شود به تست 1 |
| ۸ | 2 |
| ۹ | 4 |
| ۱۰ | 1 |
| ۱۱ | 4, بعد از mind فعل بصورت ing دار استفاده می شود. |
| ۱۲ | 3, بعد از enjoy فعل بصورت ing دار استفاده می شود. |
| ۱۳ | 1, بعد از excuse فعل بصورت ing دار استفاده می شود. |
| ۱۴ | 2, بعد از stop فعل بصورت ing دار استفاده می شود. |
| ۱۵ | 3, gerund در نقش فاعلی |
| ۱۶ | 1, بعد از حرف اضافه gerund استفاده می شود. |
| ۱۷ | 2, بعد از admit فعل بصورت ing دار استفاده می شود. |
| ۱۸ | 1, بعد از حرف اضافه |
| ۱۹ | 2, بعد از finish فعل بصورت ing دار استفاده می شود. |
| ۲۰ | 3, بعد از come فعل بصورت ing دار استفاده می شود. |
| ۲۱ | 1, بعد از dislike فعل بصورت ing دار استفاده می شود. |

۲۲. 2. بعد از find فعل بصورت ing دار استفاده می شود.
۲۳. 4. بعد از حرف اضافه in فعل بصورت ing دار استفاده می شود.
۲۴. 3. gerund در نقش فاعلی
۲۵. 1. پس از look forward to فعل بصورت ing دار استفاده می شود.
۲۶. 3. رجوع شود به تست 24
۲۷. 1. بعد از حرف اضافه on
۲۸. 3
۲۹. 2
۳۰. 1. رجوع شود به تست 24
۳۱. 2. اگر بعد از it's time فاعل بیاید باید از گذشته ساده استفاده شود.
۳۲. 3. بعد از mind فعل بصورت ing دار استفاده می شود.
۳۳. 3. بعد از be opposed to فعل بصورت ing دار به کار می رود.
۳۴. 2. رجوع شود به تست 25
۳۵. 1. بعد از be accustomed to فعل بصورت ing دار استفاده می شود.
۳۶. 3. رجوع شود به تست فوق
۳۷. 3. ساختار stop را مطالعه کنید. (چون توقف صورت گرفته تا کار دیگری انجام شود از مصدر با to استفاده می شود).
۳۸. 1. بعد از feel like فعل بصورت ing دار استفاده می شود.
۳۹. 4. رجوع شود به تست 35
۴۰. 1. حرف اضافه
۴۱. 4. رجوع شود به تست 25
۴۲. 4. چون سیگار کشیدن اول اتفاق افتاده و بعد stop صورت گرفته از Gerund استفاده می شود.
۴۳. 1. چون ابتدا چیزی را گفته وبعد regret (پشیمانی) صورت گرفته از Gerund استفاده می شود.
۴۴. 3. رجوع شود به تست 38
۴۵. 1. چون دیدن اول اتفاق افتاده و من به خاطر نمی آورم (remember بعد از see) از Gerund استفاده می شود.
۴۶. 3. توضیحات فوق
۴۷. 2. عمل اول forget است و عمل دوم tell پس فعل به صورت مصدر با to استفاده می شود.
۴۸. 4. بعد از worth از Gerund استفاده می شود.
۴۹. 2. بعد از can't help از Gerund استفاده می شود.
۵۰. 4. تست فوق

Tests: Peterson's Success

1. Medical students must to study both the theory and practice of medicine.

A B C D

2. R. M. Bartlett of Philadelphia.....the first private business college in the United States in 1843.

- (A) founding
(B) founded
(C) was founded
(D) has founded

3. The seal, like the sea lion and the walrus, is a descendant of ancestors that
A B C
once live on the land.
D

4. In 1989 the space probe Voyager 2.....by the planet Neptune.
(A) fly
(B) having flown
(C) flying
(D) flew

5. The top layer of the ocean stores as much heat as does gases in the
A B C D
atmosphere.

6. A cupful of stagnant water may.....millions of microorganisms.
(A) contains
(B) to contain
(C) contain
(D) containing

7. Sarah Knight.....a fascinating account of a journey she made from Boston to New York in 1704.
(A) written
(B) writes
(C) wrote
(D) writing

8. Every one of the body's billions of cells require a constant supply of food and oxygen.
A B C D

9. In Colonial times, flax and wool required months of preparation before they
A B
could be dyed and spin into cloth.
C D

10. Although some people find bats terrifying, they are actually beneficial because they ate harmful insects.
A B C D

11. All animals.....on other animals or plants.
(A) feed
(B) feeds
(C) fed
(D) feeding

12. Chromium.....in the manufacture of stainless steel.

1. a
2. b
3. d
4. d
5. c
6. c
7. c
8. b
9. d
10. d
11. a
12. b
13. b
14. d
15. c
16. d
17. b
18. a
19. a
20. d

Adjectives:

Adjectives are words that describe nouns and pronouns. Adjectives answer the questions:

What kind? How much? Which one? How many?

For example:

What kind? ---Red rose

---Gold ring

Which one? ---The second one

---Those chocolates

How much? ---Much sugar

---Little effort

How many? ---Several chances

---Six books

MODIFIERS OF ADJECTIVES

Intensifier ⇨ *adjective: very, quite, too, just, rather, fairly, pretty, so*

Rather / a pretty large truck

Quite good/Pretty good

Fairly

Noun ⇨ *adjective:*

---Ice-cold, ---Navy blue, ---Crystal clear ---Razor-sharp, ---Sky-high

---I felt her hand and it was ice-cold.

---I'd love an ice-cold glass of water.

---His eyes had grown ice-cold.

---He is **the epitome of** ice-cold judgement. = dispassionate

---She was dressed in navy blue.

---She's got a razor-sharp mind.

---These animals have razor-sharp teeth.

---Sky-high trees

<p>---Sky-high prices</p> <p>---The garbage was piled sky-high.</p> <p>---The critics praised the play sky-high.</p>
<p>Adverb ⇨ <i>adjective</i>:</p> <p>---Well-spoken,</p> <p>---Beautifully decorated</p> <p>---Some people are <i>genetically</i> prone to store high levels of iron.</p> <p>---Recently widowed people</p> <p>---Medically treated</p>
<p><i>Adjective</i> ⇨ Prepositional phrase:</p> <p>---Ready for everything,</p> <p>---Enough for all...</p>
<p><i>Adjective</i> ⇨ Infinitive:</p> <p>---Good to eat,</p> <p>---Ready to serve,</p> <p>---Able to learn</p>

Kinds of adjectives:

There are five kinds of adjectives: Common adjectives, proper adjectives, compound adjectives, articles, and indefinite adjectives.

1. Common/simple adjectives describe nouns or pronouns.

---Strong man, ---Green plant, ---Beautiful view

2. Proper adjectives are formed from proper nouns.

---California vegetables (from the noun "California")

---Mexican food (from the noun "Mexico")

3. Compound adjectives are made up of more than one word.

---A far-off country = hyphenated adjective

4. Articles are a special type of adjective. There are three articles: a, an, the.

5. Indefinite adjectives don't specify the specific amount of something.

All another any both

Each	either	few	many
More	neither	most	other
Several	some		

Derivational adjectives:

A. noun derived adjectives: "Adjectives of relation" are adjectives formed from a noun, with the general meaning of, "relating to or like (the noun)" (the precise range of meanings, and shades of meaning, varies case by case). In English these adjectives are often constructed by adding a suffix to the noun or noun root. A variety of suffixes may be used in this way:

-al or -ial	(---Behavioural),
-ous	(---Famous),
-y or -ly	(---A manly voice), ---Friendly relationships, ---A friendly woman
-ic	(---Angelic), [æn'dʒel.ɪk]
-an or -ian	(---Amazonian),
-ary	(---Planetary),
-ile	(---Infantile diseases),
-ine	(---Elephantine), canine, feline, bovine, porcine, vulpine, aquiline
-ive	(---Instinctive),
-ish	(---Boyish),
-like	(---Birdlike),
-less	(---Homeless).

B. Adj derived: ---Bluish

مايل به آبي، آبي فام

C. Verb-derived:

-ive	(---Active),
-able	(---Portable)

Note: -cal/-cle Adjectives end in -cal.

e.g.

Critical
Logical
Magical
Musical

Nouns end in -cle.

article
bicycle
circle
cubicle

Nautical
Physical
Practical
Theatrical
Tropical
Whimsical

cuticle
miracle
particle
spectacle
uncle
vehicle

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

1 syllable	2 syllables		3 or more syllables
	Ends in “-y”	Does not end in “-y”	
Add “-er” to the base form	Add “-er” to the base form	Add “more” in front of the base form	Add “more” in front of the base form
For example	For example	For example	For example
small→ smaller	noisy→ noisier	crowded→ more crowded	expensive→ more expensive
new→ newer	dirty→ dirtier	modern→ more modern	majestic→ more majestic
cheap→ cheaper	smelly→ smellier	complex→ more complex	impressive→ more impressive
close→ closer	busy→ busier	useless→ more useless	beautiful→ more beautiful

Test:

Prehistoric villagers tended to work harder, suffer from more diseases, and eat the

A

B

C

D

poorer diet than nomadic hunters did.

1 syllable	2 syllables		3 or more syllables
	Ends in “-y”	Does not end in “-y”	
Add “the -est” to the base form	Add “the -est” to the base form	Add “the most” in front of the base form	Add “the most” in front of the base form
For example	For example	For example	For example
small→ the smallest	noisy→ the noisiest	crowded→ the most crowded	expensive→ the most expensive
new→ the newest	dirty→ the dirtiest	modern→ the most modern	majestic→ the most majestic
cheap→ the cheapest	smelly→ the smelliest	complex→ the most complex	impressive→ the most impressive

close➔ the closest	busy➔ the busiest	useless➔ the most useless	beautiful➔ the most beautiful
--------------------	-------------------	---------------------------	-------------------------------

With these adjectives **both forms** are correct:

---Clever	cleverer/ more clever	cleverest/ most clever
---Common	commoner/ more common	commonest/ most common
---Gentle	gentler/ more gentle	gentlest/ most gentle
---Happy	happier / more happy	happiest/ most happy
---Narrow	narrower / more narrow	narrowest/ most narrow
---Pleasant	pleasanter/ more pleasant	pleasantest/ most pleasant
---Shallow	shallower / more shallow	shallowest/ most shallow
---Simple	simpler/ more simple	simplest/ most simple
---Tender	tenderer/ more tender	tenderest/ most tender
---Tired	tireder/ more tired	tiredest/ most tired
---Yellow	yellower / more yellow	yellowest/ most yellow
---Handsome	handsomer/ more handsome	handsomest/ most handsome
---Polite	politer/ more polite	politest/ most polite
---Quiet	quieter	quietest
---Fun	funner/ more fun	funnest/ the most fun

---Jane is **politer than** Mary. Jane is *the politest* person in her class.

---Jane is **more polite than** Mary. Jane is *the most polite* person in her class.

➔➔ Comparative Form and Superlative Form (irregular comparisons)

Positive form	Comparative form	Superlative form
Good	Better	Best
Bad / ill	Worse	Worst
Little (amount)	Less	Least
Little (size)	Smaller	Smallest
Much / many	More	Most
Far (place or time)	Further	Furthest
Far (place)	Farther	Farthest
Late (time)	Later	Latest
Late (order)	Latter	Last
Old (people and things)	Older	Oldest
Old (people)	Elder	Eldest

---Please take *the farthest* seat.

---Are there any *further* questions?

a longer way in the past or the future

---Think further back into your childhood.

---How will the company be doing ten years further on?

➔➔ Comparisons can be made more exact by using ***slightly***, ***considerably*** or ***significantly*** before the comparative:

---Dickens' novels are ***considerably longer*** than Austen's.

---The new Mercedes is ***slightly more economical*** than the old model.

➔➔➔ Some adjectives do not have a comparative or superlative meaning so they are rarely used with -er/-est or more/less/ most/least. These include *complete, equal, favorite, ideal, unique*.

➔ An exception: ---"All animals are equal but some animals are ***more equal*** than others." (George Orwell: Animal Farm)

It is possible to use "less" with any adjective - one, two or three syllable. In many situations, however, it might make more sense to change the word:

e.g.

Less warm → cooler

Less small → bigger

Less likely → more unlikely

Less expensive → cheaper

Less noisy → quieter

Less dangerous → safer

Tests: Peterson's Success

1. Liberal arts colleges cultivate general intellectually abilities rather than technical

A

B

C

professional skills.

D

2. Goats are extremely destruction to natural vegetation and are often responsible for soil erosion.

A

B

C

D

3. Wild plants were of considerable important to early settlers, and many are still

A

B

C

used medicinally and as foods.

D

4. One important branch of linguistics is semantics, which analysis the meaning of words.

A

B

C

D

5. Unlike folk dancers, which are the product of a single culture, ballet is an

A

B

C

international art form.

D

6. The strong of a rope is directly proportional to its cross-sectional area.

A

B

C

D

7. Black bears can move rapidly when necessary and are skillful tree-climbers for their size and weigh.

A

B

C

D

8. In an arboretum, trees are cultivated for scientific and educational purpose.

A

B

C

D

9. In most Western states, the first major industry was mining, which was gradually supplemented by ranches.
A B
C D

10. Peach trees grow good in a variety of soil types, but do best in sandy loam.
A B C D

11. The unit of measuring called the foot was originally based on the length of the human foot.
A B C D

12. Philosopher Theodore A. Langerman was interested in the fields of literary and music.
A B C
D

13. A chemical react that absorbs heat is called endothermic.
A B C D

14. One characteristic of the poems of Emily Dickinson is the sharp of her images.
A B C D

15. Luther Gulick was a teacher and physician who spent much of his live promoting physical fitness.
A B C D

16. A dog should be checked regularly by a veterinarian to ensure that it remains in good healthy.
A B C D

17. Southwestern Boston is made up of Hyde Park, West Roxbury, and other pleasant residential neighbors.
A B
C D

18. Pure nitric acid is colorless, but it acquires a yellow color when it is exposed of air.
A B C D

19. Hunting and fishing techniques were highly developed among the North American Indians, particularly in regions where agriculture was less success.
A
B C D

20. Science requires the careful collect and organization of data.

A

B

C

D

Comparison of Quantity

More:

1. ---[More difficult] problems

2. ---[More] difficult [problems]

1. ---More difficult problem

1. ---More narrow rooms/screws

2. ---More narrow rooms/screws

1. ---More happy people

2. ---More happy people

1. ---More shallow rivers

2. ---More shallow rivers

1. ---More brilliant gold

2. ---More brilliant gold

1. ---More contaminated water

2. ---More contaminated water

1. ---More brave Iranians



More + 1 syllable adj / 2 syllable adj ending in er, y, ly, le, ow, ure + U/C PL nouns¹ → apart from exceptions

تعداد بیشتری / مقدار بیشتری + اسم + صفت

More + 2 syllable adj not ending in er, y, ly, le, ow, ure / 3 syllable adjs or more + U/C PL nouns¹

۱. تعداد بیشتری / مقدار بیشتری + اسم + صفت

۲. اسم + صفت + تر

More + 2 syllable adj not ending in er, y, ly, le, ow, ure / 3 syllable adjs or more + C singular

nouns¹

اسم + صفت + تر

→→→¹ All these rules apply as long as there is no other modifier before more.

---The more contaminated water

Less:

1. ---Less brilliant gold

2. ---Less brilliant gold

1. ---Less difficult problems

1. ---Less contaminated water

2. ---Less contaminated water

1. ---A less crowded bus

اتوبوسي كه خلوت تر است .

1. ---Less hot water

2. ---Less hot water

1. ---Less attractive views

→→→→¹Less + adj + U nouns

۱. مقدار كم تري + اسم + صفت ۲. اسم + صفت معكوس + تر

¹Less + adj + C nouns

۱. اسم + ي + كه از...كم تري برخوردار است

۲. اسم + صفت معكوس + تر

→→→¹ All these rules apply as long as there is no other modifier before less.

---The less contaminated water

→→→

1. [much+ adj] + countable nouns

---Much interesting memories¹

خاطرات بسيار جالب

اسم + بسيار + صفت

2. [much + adj] + uncountable nouns

[much] + adj + [uncountable nouns]

---Much polluted air²

---Much brilliant gold

→→→→ Most + adj + C plural

---Most difficult questions

اکثر، بیشتر + اسم + صفت

اغلب سوال های سخت

اسم + بسیار سخت

سوال های بسیار سخت

Most + adj + U nouns

اکثر، بیشتر (ین) + اسم + صفت

---Most religious and racial discrimination is based on ignorance.

بیشتر تبعیضات مذهبی و نژادی به علت جهل است.

→→→→ Modifiers + most + 2 syllable adj not ending in er, y, ly, le, ow, ure / 3 syllables adj or more + C/U nouns

صفت + ترین + اسم

The Most difficult questions

M1

→→ The + Adjective = Plural Noun

---After the accident, the injured were taken to hospital.

---A nightclub used by the rich and the famous

---He looks for **the lonely, the lost, and the unloved.**

---The blind

---The old

---The dead

---The poor

---The deaf

---The rich

---The handicapped

---The unemployed

---The mentally ill

---The young = The youth

→→ All these adjectives cannot be used with possessives:

×---The ~~poor's~~ problem ✓---The problems of the poor ---Poor people's problems

---The quick and the dead

Test:

It's a **curious** fact that in ages and all societies, numbers of people are attracted to the gentle, not the strong, to the sufferers and not the successful.

1. every / great
2. several / some
3. all / large
4. any / very much
5. enough / plenty

TOEFL:

adjective_er

S + V + adverb_er + THAN + noun/ pronoun ** (more than)

more + adj/adv

less + adj/adv

S + V + far/much + Adj/Adv_er + than + noun/pronoun

S + V + far/much + more + Adj/Adv + than + noun/pronoun

---Harry's watch is far more expensive than mine.

---He speaks English much more rapidly than he does Spanish.

S + V + as + many/much/little/few + noun + as + noun/pronoun + Aux verb

S + V + more/fewer/less + noun + than + noun/pronoun + Aux verb

---He earns as much money as his father does.

Few

---We have made **few** mistakes.

---We have made **fewer** mistakes **than** we did last quarter.

---We have made **the fewest** mistakes **of** any comparable period.

Little

---It was only **a little** money.

---It was **less** money **than** we had expected.

---It was **the least** money that we have ever earned.

Many

---It took **many** dollars to buy that.

---It took **more** dollars **than** we had expected.

---It took **the most** dollars **of** any transaction we have ever had.

Much

---We don't have **much** money.

---We have **more** money **than** they do.

---We have **the most** money **of** any company.

→→→TOEFL: Double Comparatives

Remember that when two comparatives are used together, the first comparative expresses cause and the second comparative expresses result. A comparative is more or less with an adjective or an adjective with -er.

Avoid using *as* instead of *the*. Avoid using the incorrect form *lesser*. Avoid omitting *the*. Avoid omitting -er from the adjective.

The + comparative + [subject + verb], the + comparative + [subject + verb]

---The deeper you dive, the stronger the pressure is.

---The smaller the shark is, the smaller the danger is.

---The more I learn, the less I fear.

➔ And this form can be used with adjective only:

---The bigger the better.

---The cheaper the happier.

---The more the merrier.

The following structure can be used as well.

The + comparative + the + noun, the + comparative + the + noun

*** Inversion (the closer an object)**

---The deeper the water, the thinner the fish.

---The darker the water, the bigger the eyes.

✗---The more you study during the semester, the lesser you have to study the week before exams.

✓---The more you study during the semester, the less you have to study the week before exams.

✗---The faster we finish, the soon we can leave.

✓---The faster we finish, the sooner we can leave.

✗---The less one earns, the lesser one must pay in income taxes.

✓---The less one earns, the less one must pay in income taxes.

✗---The louder he shouted, less he convinced anyone.

✓---The louder he shouted, the less he convinced anyone.

✗---The more you practice speaking, the well you will do it.

✓---The more you practice speaking, the better you will do it.

✓---The hotter it is, the more miserable I feel.

✓---The more you study, the smarter you will become.

✓---The more (that) you study, the smarter you will become.

✓---The more (that) we know about it, the more we are assured.

✓---The shorter (it is), the better (it is).

➔➔➔ ✓---*The longer Burma resists offer of help, the more likely it is that the disaster will degenerate beyond anyone's control.*

Test:

---It is generally true that the lower the stock market falls,.....

(A) higher the price of gold rises

(B) the price of gold rises high

(C) the higher the price of gold rises

(D) rises high the price of gold

Test:

---The higher the solar activity, the intense the auroras or polar light displays in the skies near the Earth's geomagnetic poles.

➔➔➔➔ Exercise

Complete these "the + comparative" pairs with possible results. Remember, there is no one correct

answer.

1. The more people use public transportation such as buses and subways,....
2. The more people know about sharks,...
3. The more people study about the environment,...
4. The more pressure people put on big corporations,...
5. The more people recycle,...

---The later she became, the faster she ran.

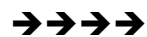
---The faster she ran,...

---The less work he did, the more free time he had.

---The more free time he had,...

---The more worried he was, the more cigarettes he smoked.

---The more cigarettes he smoked,...



TOEFL: Illogical Comparatives

Remember that comparisons must be made with logically comparable nouns. You can't compare *the climate* in the North with *the South*. You must compare *the climate* in the North with *the climate* in the South.

Remember that *that of* and *those of* are used instead of repeating a noun to express a logical comparative. An example with *different from* appears below.

✓---**Football in** the US is different from **that in** other countries.

✓---**The rules of** football are different from **those of** soccer.

Avoid omitting *that* and *those*. Avoid using *than* instead of *from* with *different*.

✗---The food in my country is very different *than* that in the United States.

✓---**The food in** my country is very different from **that in** the United States.

✗---The classes at my university are very different from State University.

✓---**The classes at** my university are very different from **those at** State University.

✓---His appearance is different from what I have expected.
...than I have expected. (A-E)

✗---His drawings are as perfect as his instructor.
✓---His drawings are as perfect as those of his instructor.
(instructor's = instructor's drawings)

✗---The salary of a professor is higher than a secretary.
✓---The salary of a professor is higher than that of a secretary.
(that of = the salary of)

✗---The duties of a policeman are more dangerous than a teacher.
✓---The duties of a policeman are more dangerous than those of a teacher.
(those of = the duties of)

Poor: The errors in this prediction are greater than in table III.

Better: The errors in this prediction are greater than those in table III.

One's fingerprints are.....

- (A) different from those of any other person
- (B) different from any other person
- (C) different any other person
- (D) differs from another person

---Perhaps the colonists were looking for a climate like England, when they decided to settle the North American continent instead of the South American continent.

TOEFL/IELTS:

Not as as

Not so...as

---He is not as tall as his father (is).

---He is not so tall as his father (is).

S + V + (not) as + adj/ adv + as + noun/ pronoun

S + V + the same + (noun) + as + noun/ pronoun

Adjectives

Heavy, light
Wide, narrow
Deep, shallow
Long, short
Big, small

Nouns

weight
width
depth
length
size

High

height

---My house is as high as his.

---My house is the same height as his.

Exercise 7.23: Faulty and Incomplete Comparisons

Directions: Correct the sentences if there's a problem, or write C if correct.

1. I hit the balls faster than John.
2. The train is slower than the car.
3. The trip to London is longer than New York.
4. I would have bought the green one, because it is more shorter than the red one.
5. They were all running fast, but Tom was the faster.
6. Swimming in the lake is better than the marina.
7. Running a long time is more detrimental to the shins than lifting weights.
8. I saw and liked the simpler one the more than the other type.
9. The outside was cold, but the inside was colder, also.
10. I run better than Mary.
11. She is the more fast of the entire school.
12. The rebels claimed to have killed more of the government's troops.
13. The boys shot the slingshots better than the girls.
14. The girls threw the ball better than the boys.
15. The man was averser to the cold than he was to the heat.
16. Trying one's patience is worsen than anything.
17. I run better than swim.
18. I read X, and I read Y, but I like X best.
19. The ankle was more swole than the arm was.
20. He will have to kick it faster at the end than he did the beginning.
21. Knowing the truth now is better than finding out.
22. Going up the front is much better than the back.
23. He reacted in a civiler manner than she did.
24. He will eat as fast as he could.
25. I went there as quickly as her.

Answers to Exercise 7.23:

Faulty and Incomplete Comparisons

Directions: Correct the sentences if there's a problem, or write C if correct.

1. I hit the balls faster than John **did**.
2. The train is slower than the car **is**.

3. The trip to London is longer than **the trip to** New York. We do not want to compare the trip to the city of New York.
4. I would have bought the green one, because it is **shorter** than the red one is.
5. They were all running fast, but Tom was the **fastest**.
6. Swimming in the lake is better than **swimming in** the marina. The comparison is to swimming in the marina and not to the marina itself.
7. Running a long time is more detrimental to the shins than lifting weights **is**. Without any changes, the sentence indicates that running is detrimental to lifting weights.
8. I saw and liked the simpler one more than the other type. (Delete *the*)
9. The outside was cold, but the inside was **cold**, also. (Delete *-er*)
10. I run better than Mary **does**.
11. She is the **fastest** of the entire school.
12. The rebels claimed to have killed more of the government's troops than the rebels had lost to the government.
13. The boys shot the slingshots better than the girls **did**. The boys were not shooting the girls!
14. The girls threw the ball better than the boys **did**. The girls did not throw the boys!
15. The man was more averse to the cold than he was to the heat. (Delete *-er*)
16. Trying one's patience is **worse** than anything.
17. I run better than I swim.
18. I read X, and I read Y, but I like X better. Use **better** with the comparison of two things.
19. The ankle was more **swollen** than the arm was. (V3 as adj.)
20. He will have to kick it faster **at** the end than he did at the beginning. Without the word *at*, the sentence suggests that he actually kicked *the beginning*.
21. Knowing the truth now is better than finding **it** out **later**.
22. Going up the front is much better than **going up the** back. Ensure that your comparisons are complete.
23. He reacted in a **more civil** manner than she did.
24. He will eat as fast as he **can**.
25. I went there as quickly as **she did**. Use the subject case, because, most often, the entire comparison will have a verb at the end.

➔➔➔ Exact Similarity: **The Same as** and **the Same**

Noun + is the same as + Noun

Noun + Noun + are the same

Noun (plural) + are the same

Remember that the same as and the same have the same meaning, but the same as is used between the two nouns compared, and the same is used after the two nouns or a plural noun.

Avoid using *to* and *like* instead of *as*. Avoid using *the same* between the two nouns compared.

✗---That car is almost the same ~~like~~ mine.

✓---That car is almost the same as mine.

or

✓---That car and mine are almost the same.

✓---These cars are almost the same.

✗---My briefcase is exactly the same that yours.

✓---My briefcase is exactly the same as yours.

or

✓---My briefcase and yours are exactly the same.

---Although we often use "speed" and "velocity" interchangeably, in a technical sense, "speed" is not always....."velocity".

(A) alike

(B) the same as

(C) similar

(D) as

---When two products are basically the same as, advertising can influence the **public's choice**.

A

B

C

D

Adj. used after Linking Verbs

(Not usually before nouns):

---The house ablaze is next door to mine.

Afloat

Afraid

Akin

Alike

Alone

---A lone figure was standing at the bus stop.

---He was **by no means** a lone person criticizing the government.

---A lone gunman

---The lone survivor of a shipwreck

floating

frightened

similar

like, similar

lone

Ashamed

Asleep

Awake

shy

sleeping

waking

Waking hours/life/day/moment etc.= all the time when you are awake:

---His face **haunted** her every waking moment!

---She seems to spend every waking hour at the piano.

Away

Bleeding

far away

bloody

1. Used to emphasize what you are saying in a slightly rude way:

---It's bloody cold out there!

---That's a bloody good idea.

---Bloody hell!

2. **Bloody well**: used to emphasize an angry statement or order:

---It serves you **bloody well** right.

3.

---His bloody nose: Bleeding.

---Bloody medical waste: Bloodstained, blood-soaked

Content = dis...

Glad

Ill

...

...

Small

Unable

Well

satisfied

happy

sick

mere

sheer

little

weak

healthy

TOEFL: General Similarity-Like and Alike

Remember that like and alike have the same meaning, but like is used between the two nouns compared, and alike is used after the two nouns or a plural noun.

Noun + is like + Noun

Noun + Noun + are alike

Noun (plural) + are alike

Avoid using as instead of like. Avoid using like after the two nouns compared.

✗---These suits are like.

✓---This suit is like that suit.

or

✓---These suits are alike.

✗---I want to buy some shoes same like the ones I have on.

✓---I want to buy some shoes like the ones I have on.

or

✓---The shoes I want to buy and the shoes I have on are alike.

✗---Anthony and his brother don't look like.

✓---Anthony doesn't look like his brother.

or

✓---Anthony and his brother don't look alike.

Test:

---Although they are smaller, **chipmunks** are.....most other ground squirrels.

- (A) like to
- (B) like as
- (C) like
- (D) alike

Test:

---The first living structures **to appear** on Earth thousands of years ago were alike viruses.

Noun + is similar to + Noun

Noun + Noun + are similar

Noun (plural) + are similar

---These two brothers are similar.

---She is similar to her mother.

➔➔➔➔TOEFL: Comparative Estimates-Multiple Numbers

Remember that the following are examples of multiple numbers:

Half	four times
Twice	five times
Three times	ten times

Avoid using *so* instead of *as* after a multiple. Avoid using ~~more than~~ instead of **as much as** or **as many as**. Avoid using the multiple after *as much* and *as many*.

✗---This one is prettier, but it costs twice ~~more than~~ the other one.

✓---This one is prettier, but it costs twice as much as the other one.

✗---The rent at College Apartments is only half ~~so~~ much as you pay here.

✓---The rent at College Apartments is only half as much as you pay here.

✗---Bob found a job that paid ~~as much twice as~~ he made working at the library.

✓---Bob found a job that paid twice as much as he made working at the library.

✗---The price was very reasonable; I would gladly have paid three times ~~more than~~ he asked.

✓---The price was very reasonable; I would gladly have paid three times as much as he asked.

✗---We didn't buy the car because they wanted as much twice as it was worth.

✓---We didn't buy the car because they wanted twice as much as it was worth.

---After the purchase of the Louisiana Territory, the United States had.....it had previously owned.

(A) twice more land than

1. well 2. better 3. the best 4. good

13. My sister is my brother.

1. clever than 2. more clever than 3. most clever 4. clever

14. Frank played than Alex.

1. better 2. good 3. best 4. well

15. She got mark in our class.

1. the worst 2. worse 3. bad 4. worse than

16. She doesn't speak English

1. good 2. well 3. better 4. the best

17. My aunt always cooks

1. goodly 2. good 3. better 4. well

18. I think physics is interesting than chemistry.

1. least 2. little 3. less 4. hardly

19. Ahmad plays football as as Reza.

1. good 2. well 3. better 4. the best

20. He was person I had ever seen.

1. kinder than 2. kind 3. the kindest 4. as kind as

21. This car is

1. yours 2. yours car 3. your 4. you

22. That book is

1. my 2. mine 3 mine book 4. me

23. This is bag.

1. mine 2. me 3. I 4. my

24. He speaks English

1. every day clearly in the class
2. in the class clearly every day
3. clearly in the class every day
4. in the class every day clearly

25. These digital computers work as as those ones.

1. best 2. better 3. good 4. well

26. Mina drives than her brother and sister.

1. careless 2. carelessly 3. more carelessly 4. more careless

27. Susan has lost a lot of weight. Now she is three kilos than she used to be.

1. light 2. lighter 3. lightest 4. the lightest

28. I'm sure this book isn't Isn't it yours?

1. me 2. mine 3. my 4. myself

29. Whenever Zahra faces a difficulty, she asks me to help her.

She thinks I'm than she is.

1. as clever as 2. cleverer 3. less clever 4. the cleverest

30. Robert doesn't write well. He has handwriting in our class.

1. the worse 2. the worst 3. bad 4. badly

31. He is going to study for his exam.

1. hard 2. hardly 3. more hard 4. more harder

32. The box was too heavy, everyone could..... lift it.

1. more hard 2. more harder 3. hardly 4. hard

33. There are two pieces of steak. You can have one if you like I am not very hungry.

1. bigger 2. biggest 3. the biggest 4. the bigger

34. I have lost my English book. Can I use?

1. yours 2. of you 3. of yours 4. you

35. He will let me ride bicycle.

1. he's 2. hers 3. his 4. it's

36. The car which was parked by the wall is

1. my 2. your 3. mine 4. her

37. Aren't they friends ?

1. of you 2. of yours 3. to yours 4. to you

38. That brother of is sick and none of you try to take care of

1. you, him 2. yours, him
3. yours, himself 4. you, himself

39. Do you know that China has.....population in the world?

1. large 2. larger 3. the large 4. the largest

40. Maria and her sister are my best friends. I respect very much.

1. they 2. themselves 3. them 4. theirs

41. My sister and were taken to the cinema by our uncle last night.

1. I 2. me 3. mine 4. myself

42. Your dictionary is much better than my dictionary. I wonder why you never use
 1. ours 2. mine 3. yours 4. theirs
43. George and Barbara never borrow my dictionary. They use
 1. theirs 2. their 3. they 4. themselves
44. Are these your aunt's glasses? Yes, they are
 1. hers 2. his 3. yours 4. theirs
45. "Is this your suitcase on the desk?" "No, it's"
 1. he 2. him 3. himself 4. John's
46. "Isn't this umbrella your sister's?" "No it isn't.....".
 1. hers 2. her 3. herself 4. she
47. My sister and were taken to the cinema by our uncle last night.
 1. I 2. me 3. mine 4. myself
48. I took my brother out with to do some shopping.
 1. I 2. me 3. mine 4. myself
49., the harder he or she falls.
 1. The bigger a person 2. The bigger a person is
 3. The person the bigger 4. He is the bigger person
50. Please excusebrother.
 1. me 2. we 3. us 4. our
51. He gave an English dictionary.
 1. we 2. you 3. they 4. she
52. Her job is harder than
 1. me 2. my 3. myself 4. mine
53. They live in Karaj. I stayed withlast summer.
 1. they 2. them 3. their 4. themselves
54. Will you ask father to givesome money to buy ourselves a pen?
 1. we 2. our 3. ourselves 4. us
55. This park is famous forbeautiful flowers.
 1. its 2. his 3. it's 4. it
56. Which one is correct?
 1. Didn't you know that it was me who played the joke?
 2. This is him speaking.

3. Among us men, it was he who always acted as the interpreter.
4. Between you and I, this isn't a very good price.

57. Which one is correct?

1. The cake is from Jane, and the flowers are from Larry and we.
2. Among we teachers, it is Mr. Salehi who knows 4 languages.
3. He always helps my wife and I with our housework.
4. Is it they at the door again?

58. The production of cars in Iran isTurkey.

1. more as
2. more than that in
3. more of
4. more that

59. Her qualifications are any other candidates.

1. better than
2. better that of
3. better than that of
4. better than those of

60. The audience is much last year's concert.

1. larger than
2. larger than that of
3. larger that of
4. larger than those of

پاسخ تست ها

۱. ۴، ضمیر ملکی به کار می رود و معادل one of my friends می باشد.
۲. ۲، صفت تفضیلی
۳. ۴، صفت عالی
۴. ۳، صفت عالی
۵. ۲، صفت عالی
۶. ۱، صفت تساوی
۷. ۲، صفت عالی
۸. ۱، صفت تفضیلی
۹. ۴، صفت تفضیلی
۱۰. ۲، صفت تساوی
۱۱. ۳، صفت عالی
۱۲. ۴، قبل از اسم صفت می آید.
۱۳. ۲، صفت تفضیلی
۱۴. ۱، صفت تفضیلی
۱۵. ۱، صفت عالی
۱۶. ۲، قید به کار می رود (صحت کردن را توصیف می کند)
۱۷. ۴، رجوع به ۱۶
۱۸. ۳، صفت تفضیلی
۱۹. ۲، قید تساوی
۲۰. ۳، صفت عالی
۲۱. ۱، ضمیر ملکی می آید چون به جای اسم و صفت آمده است.
۲۲. ۲، ضمیر ملکی (تست ۲۱)
۲۳. ۴، صفت ملکی قبل از اسم می آید.
۲۴. ۳، ترتیب قیود
۲۵. ۴، (تست ۱۶ و ۱۹)

۲۶. ۳، قید تفضیلی، چون فعل را توصیف می کند.
۲۷. ۲، صفت تفضیلی
۲۸. ۲، ضمیر ملکی می آید.
۲۹. ۲، صفت تفضیلی
۳۰. ۲، صفت عالی
۳۱. ۱، چون در این جمله توصیف فعل است پس قید می آید.
۳۲. ۳، چون hardly مفهوم جمله را منفی می کند.
۳۳. ۴، صفت تفضیلی و چون معرفه است حرف تعریف the نیاز است.
۳۴. ۱، ضمیر ملکی می آید.
۳۵. ۳، صفت ملکی قبل از اسم می آید.
۳۶. ۳، ضمیرملکی (تست ۲۸)
۳۷. ۲، تست ۱
۳۸. ۲، تست ۱، و در قسمت دوم ضمیر مفعولی می آید
۳۹. ۴، صفت عالی
۴۰. ۳، ضمیر مفعولی می آید، بعد از فعل متعدی respect به مفعول نیاز است.
۴۱. ۱، ضمیر فاعلی، در این جمله my sister and I جای فاعل قرارگرفته اند.
۴۲. ۳، ضمیرملکی (تست ۲۸)
۴۳. ۱، ضمیر ملکی (تست ۲۸)
۴۴. ۱
۴۵. ۴
۴۶. ۱، ضمیر ملکی (تست ۲۸)
۴۷. ۱، چون نقش فاعلی دارد.
۴۸. ۲، بعد از حرف اضافه از ضمیر مفعولی استفاده می شود.
۴۹. ۲، ساختار +.... صفت تفضیلی+the، +.... صفت تفضیلی+ the
۵۰. ۴، صفت ملکی (قبل از brother)
۵۱. ۲، ضمیرمفعولی (فقط این گزینه ضمیر مفعولی است)
۵۲. ۴، ضمیرملکی که جای my job قرارگرفته است.
۵۳. ۲، بعد از حرف اضافه از ضمیرمفعولی استفاده می شود.
۵۴. ۴، ضمیر مفعولی
۵۵. ۱، صفت ملکی
۵۶. ۳، بعد از among که حرف اضافه است باید از ضمیر مفعولی استفاده شود. گزینه ۱ و ۲ اشتباه است چون بعد از فعل to be باید از ضمیرفاعلی استفاده شود. گزینه ۴ هم به این خاطر است که between حرف اضافه است و بعد از حرف اضافه ضمیرمفعولی بکار می رود یعنی I باید به me تبدیل شود.
۵۷. ۴، همانطور که گفته شد بعد از فعل to be از ضمیرفاعلی استفاده می شود. گزینه ۱ به این خاطر اشتباه است که از ضمیر فاعلی we به جای us استفاده شده است. گزینه ۲ هم به این خاطر که among حرف اضافه است و بعد از آن باید ضمیرمفعولی (us) بیاید، گزینه ۳ هم I باید به me تبدیل شود چون اینجا نقش مفعول را دارد.
۵۸. ۲، تولید ماشین در ایران با تولید ماشین در ترکیه مقایسه شده است.
۵۹. ۴، چون qualifications جمع است و با qualifications بقیه کاندیداها مقایسه شده است.
۶۰. ۲، چون audience مفرد است و با audience سال گذشته مقایسه شده نه با خود سال گذشته.

Tests: Peterson's Success

1. The American and Canadian political systems are like in that both are
A B C
dominated by two major parties.

D

2. Wild strawberries are.....cultivated strawberries.

- (A) not sweeter
- (B) not as sweet as
- (C) less sweeter than
- (D) not sweet as

3. The period is probably the most easiest punctuation mark to use.

A B C D

4. When metal replaced wood in the construction of ships' hulls, more strong ships

A B C

could be built.

D

5. Sea bass.....freshwater bass.

- (A) are larger than
- (B) the larger the
- (C) are as large
- (D) than are larger

6. Charcoal is the more commonly used cooking fuel in the world.

A B C D

7. Automobiles, airplanes, and buses use more energy per passenger.....

- (A) as do trains
- (B) than trains do
- (C) trains do
- (D) like trains

8. Few American politicians have spoken more eloquently as William Jennings

A B C D

Bryan.

9. The larger a drop of water,.....freezing temperature.

- (A) the higher its
- (B) its higher
- (C) higher than its
- (D) the highest

10.....San Diego and San Francisco, Los Angeles has no natural harbor.

- (A) Dissimilar
- (B) Unlike
- (C) Dislike
- (D) Different

11. During a depression, economic conditions are far worst than they are during a recession.
A B C D

12. The spinal column is alike the brain in that its main functions can be classified as either sensory or motor functions.
A B C D

13. The water of the Great Salt Lake is.....seawater.

- (A) saltier than that of
- (B) as salty as that of
- (C) saltier than
- (D) so salty as

14. Fungi are the most important decomposers of forest soil, just like bacteria are the most important decomposers of grassland soil.
A B C D

15. A psychosis is a severe mental disorder,.....a neurosis.

- (A) the most serious
- (B) as serious
- (C) more serious than
- (D) as though serious

- 1. Alike
- 2. Not as sweet as
- 3. The easiest
- 4. Stronger
- 5. Are larger than
- 6. The most commonly
- 7. Than trains do
- 8. Than
- 9. The higher its
- 10. Unlike
- 11. Worse
- 12. Like
- 13. Saltier than
- 14. As
- 15. More serious than

Tests:

1. French governments have long believed that the economy is served by intervention by relying on market forces.
A) good / than

- B) well/as
- C) best/like
- D) good / such as
- E) better/than

2. In the modern world, or course, a man's wallet and social skills probably mean..... to a woman than the size of his chin.

- A) more
- B) too much
- C) a lot
- D) enough
- E) so much

3. Mete held two jobs in addition to going to night school; consequently, he was always tired.

- A) nearer
- B) nearest
- C) as near as
- D) nearly
- E) so near

4. Two natural fibers are wool and cotton; silk, a third natural fiber, is of the three.

- A) as expensive as
- B) more expensive than
- C) expensive enough
- D) the most expensive
- E) too much

5. The wooden crate seemed large, but I found it was for a dozen bowls.

- A) so small that
- B) too small
- C) small enough
- D) as small as
- E) smaller than

6. Yesterday it was that most of the trees flanking on both sides of the road were blown down.

- A) windy enough
- B) as windy as
- C) so windy
- D) very windy
- E) too windy

7. Who told you to purchase these batteries? They are..... to fit the radio.

- A) small enough
- B) very small
- C) so small that

- D) smaller that
- E) too small

8. This history book contains excellent illustrations; they are clear, occasionally, humorous.

- A) more
- B) less
- C) most
- D) enough
- E) quite

9. There was..... noise at the conference that the Marketing Department held that we couldn't hear her speech.

- A) very much
- B) enough
- C) too much
- D) quite many
- E) so much

Adverbs:

→→→ An adverb can modify a verb, an adjective, another adverb, a phrase, or a clause.

---Danny speaks fluently. (Telling us more about the verb)

→→→ The form of adverbials

In English, adverbials most commonly take the form of adverbs, adverb phrases, temporal noun phrases or prepositional phrases. Many types of adverbials (for instance reason and condition) are often expressed by clauses.

1. ---James answered immediately. (adverb)
2. ---James answered in English. (prepositional phrase)
3. ---James answered this morning. (noun phrase)
4. ---James answered in English because he had a foreign visitor. (adverbial clause)
5. ---Here, there, fast, always, ...which has no specific sign.

→→→→

Functions of adverbs:

1. Adv + adj.:
 - It's terribly cold today.
 - This steak is very badly cooked.
 - Well-cooked/done.
 - Musically intelligent people
 - The Titanic was a perfectly **seaworthy** passenger liner.
 - In fact, recently studied **seismic** records indicate that a violent earthquake, whose epicenter was on the seafloor in the region where **the Mary Celeste** was sailing, occurred some days before the ship's discovery.
2. Adv + pp:
 - He is madly in love with her.
3. Adv + adv:
 - They are playing unusually fast.
 - A microwave oven can cook even frozen food extremely quickly.
4. V + adv:
 - He listens carefully.

ساخت قید در زبان فارسی

۱. قیودی که علامتی ندارند: هنوز، اکنون، همواره، فقط
۲. قیود تنوین دار عربی: ظاهراً، حضوراً، عملاً، واقعاً
۳. قیود اشتقاقی: ۱. ب + اسم/صفت: به راحتی، به کندی، به تندی
۲. اسم/صفت + انه: خوشبختانه، شجاعانه، مردانه، زنانه
۳. بن مضارع + ان: خندان، گریان
۴. اسم + آسا/گونه/وار: معجزه آسا، دیوانه وار، پیمبر گونه
۴. گروه حرف اضافه ای: در آغاز هر بهار، در هر ساعتی
۵. گروه اسمی: سال گذشته، چند شب پیش
۶. جمله واره قیدی: هنگامی که هوا سرد می شود.



Notes:

1. We do not usually put an adv between a verb and its object.

---I often get headaches.

×---He ate greedily the chocolate cake. [Incorrect]

✓---He ate the chocolate cake greedily. [Correct]

✓---He greedily ate the chocolate cake. [Correct]

×---Seeking for sports and social activities will distract students and decrease significantly their efficiency.

2. Long adverbs do not come in mid position.

✓---He quickly got dressed.

× ---He in a hurry got dressed.
×

✓---She at once realized her mistake.
Exception

Position of Adverbs

Adverbs that modify verbs have no fixed position in the sentence:

---*Finally*, we reached a decision.

---We *finally* reached a decision.

---We reached a decision *finally*.

---*Slowly*, the great gate descended.

---The great gate *slowly* descended.

---The great gate descended *slowly*.

Kinds of adverbs: 1. Adverbs of Place, 2. Adverbs of Time, 3. Adverbs of Certainty, 4. Adverbs of Degree, 5. Viewpoint & Commenting Adverbs, 6. Adverbs of Manner

1. Adverbs of Place:

Adverbs of place tell us where something happens.

➔➔➔ They are usually placed after the main verb or after the object:

1

2

Example:

1. After the main verb:

---I looked everywhere.

---I'm going home/ out/ back.

2. After the object:

---They built a house nearby.

---She took the child outside.

➔➔➔ Adverbs expressing both movement and location:

Ahead, abroad, overseas, uphill, downhill, sideways, indoors, outdoors

Example:

---The child went indoors.

---He lived and worked abroad.

2. Adverbs of time:

→→→ "When" adverbs are usually placed at the end of the sentence:

---Goldilocks went to the Bears' house yesterday.

---I'm going to tidy my room tomorrow.

→→ "For how long" adverbs are usually placed at the end of the sentence:

---She stayed in the Bears' house all day.

---My mother lived in France for a year.

→→ "How often" adverbs expressing the frequency of an action are usually placed before the main verb but after auxiliary verbs (such as be, have, may, must):

---I often eat vegetarian food. (Before the main verb)

---He never drinks milk. (Before the main verb)

---You must always fasten your seat belt. (After the auxiliary must)

---She is never late/seasick. (After the auxiliary **be**)

---I have never forgotten my first puppy love. (After the auxiliary have and before the main verb forgotten)

---To begin with, the leaders are often taught by local people about the historical and famous places such as palaces and museums.

→→→

نکته: always, hardly ever, rarely در اول جمله خبری نمی آید:

✗---Always I get up early.

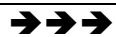
✓---Always be careful! (Imperative sentence)

نکته: قیود تکرار، قبل از افعال کمکی منفی به کار می روند به جز always که بعد از آنها می آید.

---History lectures sometimes aren't interesting. TPO 6 3

---They generally don't retire before midnight.

---He doesn't always leave before six o'clock.



---My family will call me long distance sometime. Adv

---Sometimes my family calls me long distance. Adv

---Let's have lunch sometime.

---I will see him sometime.

---Sometimes I see him.

---If I were asked to look after my grandmother for some time, I would accept it. NP

---I called you some times, but only got the answering machine. NP

---Some time adverbs that connect the past to the present are often used with the present perfect.

➡➡ Some **other "how often" adverbs** express the **exact number of times an action happens** and are **usually placed at the end of the sentence**:

---This magazine is published monthly.

---He visits his mother once a week.

➡ When a **frequency adverb** is placed **at the end** of a sentence it is **much stronger**.

Compare:

---She regularly visits France.

---She visits France regularly.

Adverbs that can be **used in these two positions**:

---Frequently,

---Generally,

---Normally,

---**Occasionally**,

---Often,

---Regularly,

---Sometimes,

---Usually

'Yet' and 'still'

Yet is used in questions and in negative sentences, and is placed at the end of the sentence or after not.

---Have you finished your work yet?

---No, not yet. (= simple negative answer)

---They haven't met him yet. (= simple negative statement)

---Haven't you finished your work yet?

Still expresses continuity; it is used in positive sentences and questions, and is placed before the main verb and after auxiliary verbs (such as be, have, might, will)

---I am still hungry.

---She is still waiting for you.

---Are you still here?

---Do you still work for the BBC?

➔➔➔ Order of Adverbs of Time

If you need to use more than one adverb of time at the end of a sentence, use them in this order:

1: 'How long'

2: 'How often'

3: 'When' (think of 'low')

Example:

1 + 2: ---I work (1) for five hours (2) every day.

2 + 3: ---The magazine was published (2) weekly (3) last year.

1 + 3: ---I was abroad (1) for two months (3) last year.

1 + 2 + 3: ---She worked in a hospital (1) for two days (2) every week (3) last year.

3. Adverbs of Certainty:

These adverbs express how certain or sure we feel about an action or event.

Common adverbs of certainty: Certainly, definitely, probably, undoubtedly, surely

➔➔➔ Adverbs of certainty go before the main verb but after the verb 'to be':

---He definitely left the house this morning.

---He is probably in the park.

With other auxiliary verb, these adverbs go between the auxiliary and the main verb:

---He has certainly forgotten the meeting.

---He will probably remember tomorrow.

➔ Sometimes these adverbs can be placed at the beginning of the sentence:

---Undoubtedly, Winston Churchill was a great politician.

4. Adverbs of Degree:

Adverbs of degree tell us about the intensity or degree of an action, an adjective or another adverb.

Common adverbs of degree: Almost, nearly, quite, just, too, enough, hardly, scarcely, completely, very, extremely.

Adverbs of degree are usually placed:

1. Before the adjective or adverb they are modifying:

e.g. ---The water was extremely cold.

2. before the main verb:

e.g. ---He was just leaving.

---She has almost finished.

Examples:

---They are completely exhausted from the trip.

---I am too tired to go out tonight.

---He hardly noticed what she was saying.

Note:

Hardly, no sooner, scarcely

When we say that one event happened immediately after another we can use sentences with hardly, no sooner, and scarcely:

---The meeting had **hardly** begun **that** all the lights went out.

---I had **no sooner** lit the barbecue **than** it started to rain.

→ We often use a past perfect in the clause with hardly, no sooner or scarcely, and a simple past in the second clause. After hardly and scarcely the second clause begins with when or before; after no sooner it begins with than. In a literary style, we often use the word order hardly / no sooner / scarcely + verb + subject at the beginning of the first clause:

---**Scarcely** had Mrs. James stepped into the classroom **when** the boys began fighting.

TOEFL:

Hardly, barely, scarcely = almost no

Hardly ever, seldom, rarely = almost never

✗---She barely **makes** it to class on time.

✗---He scarcely attends the class.

✓---He rarely attends the class.

---Because of his hearing loss, he scarcely hears me when I speak.

ضعف شنوایی

---Do you have enough money for the tuition fee? Only barely. (**Scarcely enough**)

5. Viewpoint & Commenting Adverbs:

There are some adverbs and adverbial expressions which tell us about the speaker's viewpoint or opinion about an action, or make some comment on the action.

Viewpoint

---Frankly, I think he is a liar. (= this is my frank, honest opinion)

---Theoretically, you should pay a fine. (= from a theoretical point of view but there may be another way of looking at the situation)

→→→ These adverbs are placed at the beginning of the sentence and are separated from the rest of the sentence by a comma.

→→→ **Some common Viewpoint adverbs:** Honestly, seriously, confidentially, personally, surprisingly, ideally, economically, officially, obviously, clearly, surely, undoubtedly.

Examples:

---Personally, I'd rather go by train.

---Surprisingly, this car is cheaper than the smaller model.

---Geographically, Britain is rather cut off from the rest of Europe.

Scientifically	+ (speaking)	از نظر/به لحاظ علمی
Generally = Broadly		بطور کلی، عموماً، معمولا
Financially		از نظر مالی
Economically		از دیدگاه اقتصادی
Politically		از لحاظ سیاسی
Theoretically		به لحاظ/از نظر تئوری
Practically		تقریباً، "عملاً"، درمعنی، درواقع
Frankly		رک و پوست کنده، صراحتاً
Technically		
Briefly		بطور خلاصه، مختصر کنیم
Roughly		تقریباً، قطع نظراً از جزئیات، بطور کلی
Strictly		Precisely: Strictly speaking, spiders are not insects.
Honestly		

---**Generally speaking** (= in most situations), it's quicker on public transportation.

---**Broadly speaking**, the risks are as follows.

---**Briefly** (= Using few words), the company needs to cut its expenditure.

Commenting: These are very similar to viewpoint adverbs, and often the same words, but they go in a different position - after the verb to be and before the main verb.

Some common Commenting adverbs:

Definitely, certainly, obviously, simply.

---She is certainly the best person for the job.

---You obviously enjoyed your meal.

6. Adverbs of Manner:

Adverbs of manner tell us how something happens. Adverbs of manner take 9 positions. However, they are usually placed after the main verb or after the object.

1. After the main verb (At the end of a sentence):

---She sang badly.

---He swims well.

---He ran... rapidly, slowly, quickly.

---She spoke... softly, loudly, aggressively.

---James coughed loudly to attract her attention.

2. After the object:

---He plays the flute beautifully.

---He ate the chocolate cake greedily.

3. At the beginning of a sentence to emphasize:

---Very quickly, I went into the room in order not to wake them up.

4. Before adjectives:

---It's terribly cold today.

5. Before P.P.:

---This steak is badly cooked.

6. After intensifiers:

---They are playing unusually fast.

7. Before P.P.+ N:

---The recently built bridge collapsed.

8. Between auxiliary verbs have, has, had ,and been:

---This letter has carefully been written.

9. Between to and infinitive:

---In order to fully understand the issue, you have to study hard.

→→ When there is more than one adverb in end position, the usual order in written English is adverb of manner (= saying how something is done), place, and then time:

---In the accident, she was thrown violently against the door. (= manner + place)

→→→ However, if one adverb is much longer than another, then it is usually placed last:

---They left at 3.00 with a great deal of noise. (= time + manner)

→→→ If we put an adverb of place in front position we have to put the subject after the verb be:

---*Next to the bookshelf* **was** a fireplace. (not ~~Next to the bookshelf a fireplace was.~~)

We can also do this with intransitive verbs used to indicate **position** or **movement** to a position, including hang, lie, live, sit, stand; come, fly, go, march, roll, run, swim, walk:

---Beyond the houses lay open fields. (rather than ... ~~Beyond the houses open fields lay.~~)

---Through the town square marched the band. [rather than ... ~~Through the town square the band marched.~~]

→→ The adverbs daily, hourly, monthly, weekly etc. **only go in end position**:

---The train leaves Penn station hourly. (not hourly the train leaves...; not the train hourly leaves...)

ترتيب اركان جمله:

Subject + auxiliary verb + frequency adverb + main verb + object + **adverb of Manner + adverb of Place + adverb of Time**. (MPT)

---He can usually speak English well in class every day.

ADJECTIVE

---A fast train

---A short time

---An early bird

---A hard worker

---A close decision (careful)

ADVERB

---It came fast.

---He stopped short.

---He rose early.

---He works hard.

---The car came close.

A few such words have two adverb forms: quick/quickly, slow/slowly, tight/tightly, cheap/cheaply. The difference is in the degrees of formality:
---Drive slow.
---Advance slowly.

→→→→The position of the adverb is important when there is more than one verb in a sentence. If the adverb is placed after a **clause**, then it modifies the **whole action** described by the clause.

Notice the difference in meaning between the following pairs of sentences:

---She quickly agreed to retype the letter. (= her agreement was quick)

---She agreed to retype the letter quickly. (= the re-typing was quick)

---He quietly asked me to leave the house. (= his request was quiet)

---He asked me to leave the house quietly. (= the leaving was quiet)

→→Note: Position the adverb **ONLY** with great care. It will refer to the word nearest to it, usually the word following. This may not be the meaning you intended. See how crucial to the meaning the position of 'only' can be:

1. **ONLY I** hit him in the eye yesterday. (No one else did.)
2. I **ONLY hit** him in the eye yesterday. (Did not slap him.)
3. I hit **ONLY him** in the eye yesterday. (I did not hit others.)
4. I hit him **ONLY in the eye** yesterday. (I did not hit outside the eye.)
5. I hit him in **ONLY the eye** yesterday. (Not other organs.)
6. I hit him in the **ONLY eye** yesterday. (He doesn't have another eye.)

7. I hit him in the eye **ONLY yesterday**. (Not today.)

8. I hit him in the eye **yesterday ONLY**. (Did not wait for today.)

the first reason that dinosaurs were endotherm is that their fossils **have** been found in Polar Regions, ~~such that~~**since the** only endotherm animals ~~that~~ can live in the cold environment.

TPO 5 18

---ONLY Sean eats fish on Fridays. (= No one else but Sean eats fish on Fridays.)

---Sean ONLY eats fish on Fridays. (= Sean does nothing else to the fish on Fridays but eat it. He doesn't buy it, cook it, look at it, smell it)

شان روزهای جمعه کارش فقط ماهی خوردنه.

شان روزهای جمعه فقط ماهی می خوره.

---Sean eats ONLY fish on Fridays. (= Sean eats nothing but fish on Fridays.)

شان روزهای جمعه فقط ماهی می خوره.

---Sean eats fish ONLY on Fridays.

---Sean eats fish on Fridays ONLY. (= Sean eats fish on this one day in the week and never on any other.)

---We *only* talked about the problem yesterday. (we only talked)

---We talked *only* about the problem yesterday. (only about the problem)

---We talked about the problem *only* yesterday. (only yesterday)

→→→Confusing Adverbs:

1. ---Sorry I didn't turn up. I clean forgot.

2. ---Dead sure/ tired/ drunk/ straight. ---He was dead sure.

3. ---You can eat free in my restaurant whenever you like.

---You can speak freely. I won't tell anyone what you say.

➔ **Be/feel free to speak**

4. ---He was justly punished for his crimes.

---He was just punished for his crimes.

---He was punished just for his crimes.

Modals:

افعال کمکی ناقص (modal) عبارتند از:

may	might
can	could
will	would
must	had to
shall	should
ought to	

گرامر این افعال:

۱- این افعال هیچ کدام s سوم شخص نمی گیرند.

---She **can** speak French.

۲- برای منفی کردن این افعال بعد از آنها کافیسیت که not را اضافه کنیم.

---You should **not** speak in the class.

---He will **not** study.

۳- برای سئوالی کردن این جملات کافیسیت جای فاعل را با این افعال مدال عوض کنیم:

---Can you swim?

---May I ask a question?

۴- بعد از این افعال فعل به صورت ساده (مصدر بدون to) به کار می رود. (به تمام مثالهای بالا توجه کنید)

Can

برای

۱- بیان توانایی در زمان حال و آینده بکار می رود.

---You can read this paper now.

---The doctor can see you at 4 this afternoon.

۲- برای اجازه:

---Can you help me?

---Can you lend me some money?

Could

گذشته can می باشد و برای بیان:

۱- توانایی در زمان گذشته بکار می رود.

---He could move the heavy box.

۲- پرسش یا درخواست (اجازه) مودبانه (دقت داشته باشید که در اینجا جمله گذشته نیست)

---Could you bring my glasses, please?

---Could you type this letter for me?

Shall

بیانگر درخواست مودبانه می‌باشد.

---Shall I open the door?

(معنی این جمله این است که اگر می‌خواهید در را باز کنم.)

Should

برای نصیحت و وظیفه و مسئولیت:

---You look pale. You should see a doctor.

---A teacher should be prepared for every class.

---We should always tell the truth.

---You should be careful when you drive.

نکته: توجه داشته باشید که زمان در *should* گذشته نیست.

May

از may در موارد زیر استفاده می‌شود:

۱- امکان:

---It may rain tonight.

---He may go to Shiraz.

۲- پرسش یا درخواست یا پیشنهاد مودبانه:

---May I help you?

---May I go out?

توجه داشته باشید که فرم منفی may مخفف نمی‌شود، یعنی:

---I may not stay here. (درست)

---I mayn't stay here. (نادرست)

Might

فعل کمکی فوق گرچه ظاهراً گذشته may می‌باشد اما معنی گذشته نمی‌دهد، در فعل کمکی might احتمال انجام کار ضعیف‌تر از may می‌باشد.

---It might rain tomorrow.

Will

برای بیان زمان آینده بکار می‌رود.

---We will study Math tomorrow.

Would

گذشته Will می‌باشد.

۱. برای بیان آینده در گذشته بکار می‌رود.

---He said that he would teach in the school.

۲. برای اظهار ادب و رعایت احترام در پرسش و تقاضا

---Would you give me your pen?

Must

به معنی باید در موارد زیر استفاده می‌شود:

۱. نتیجه گیری از چیزی که تقریباً مطمئن به نظر می‌رسد:

---You must be Ali's brother; you look like him.

---He must have a problem. He keeps crying.

---There is the doorbell. It must be my brother.

۲. برای بیان ضرورت و وظیفه:

---I must stop smoking.

---I must see your teacher.

---You mustn't (= must not) make noise in hospital.

must ممکن است به زمان حال و آینده دلالت کند.

---I must get up early tomorrow. There are a lot of things I want to do.

اجبار در must بیشتر از should می‌باشد.

---We must work to earn money.

مدال به صورت استمراری:

Subject + Modal + be + Ving +.....

این ساختار نشان می دهد که عملی هم اکنون در حال انجام است.

---Let's just knock on the door lightly. Tom **may be sleeping**.

---All of the lights in Amir's room are turned off. He **must be sleeping**.

Need

به معنی نیاز داشتن می باشد. این فعل هم فعل اصلی است و هم فعل کمکی. اگر فعل اصلی باشد بعد از آن مصدر با to می آید و اگر فعل کمکی (مدال) باشد مثل بقیه افعال مدال بعد از آن فعل به صورت ساده استفاده می شود.

---I **need to** study hard. ---I **needn't** study hard. ---**Need** you study hard?

در جملات فوق need فعل کمکی مدال می باشد.

Ought to

به معنی باید و بیانگر توصیه به مردم و شناساندن آنها به وظایفشان می باشد. (باید توجه داشته باشید که اینجا to به خود فعل تعلق دارد و بعد از آن فعل بصورت مصدر بدون to استفاده می شود)

---You **ought to study** hard for your exam.

به فرم سؤالی این فعل توجه کنید:

---**Ought** you **to** study hard for the exam?

Has to و Have to

از این دو برای بیان اجبار و ضرورت استفاده می شود:

---I have to get up early tomorrow, because the train leaves at 6.

---Jim can't come out with us this evening. He has to study tonight. He has an exam tomorrow.

---They will go to London next month. They have to learn English.

---Children don't like school. They have to go to school.

نکته: توجه داشته باشید که بعد از این دو فعل به صورت ساده (مصدر بدون to) استفاده می شود.

I, you, we, they	have to	مصدر بدون to
------------------	---------	--------------

He, she, it	has to	
-------------	--------	--

طرز منفی کردن این جملات:

منفی کردن این جملات مثل زمان حال ساده است یعنی با don't و doesn't منفی می شوند (البته بهتراست ابتدا زمانها را مطالعه کنید):

---They have to go to school.

---They don't *have to* go to school.

---She has to leave now.

---She doesn't have to leave now.

وقتی doesn't اضافه شد به has to به have to تبدیل می شود (مثل s سوم شخص که به does داده می شود).

طرز سؤالی کردن این جملات:

مانند زمان حال ساده با do و does سؤالی می شود.

---My friends have to work for 10 hours each day.

---Do My friends have to work for 10 hours each day?

---He has to work on Fridays.

---Does he have to work on Fridays?

Had to

برای بیان اجبار در گذشته استفاده می شود و شکل گذشته have to و has to می باشد و برای گذشته must نیز استفاده می شود:

---We waited for the bus for a long time, but it didn't come. We had to walk home.

---We had some guests. We didn't have anything at home. We had to go shopping.

طرز منفی کردن این جملات:

منفی کردن این جملات مثل زمان گذشته ساده است یعنی با didn't منفی می شوند و سپس had to به have to تبدیل می شود:

---They had to study hard.

---They didn't have to study hard.

---She had to borrow money.

---She didn't have to borrow money.

طرز سئوالی کردن این جملات:

مانند زمان گذشته ساده با did سئوالی می شود و سپس had to به have to تبدیل می شود.

---They had to find a new house.

---Did they have to find a new house?

---He had to sit on a hard chair.

---Did he have to sit on a hard chair?

Would rather

به معنی ترجیح دادن و بعد از آن فعل بصورت مصدر بدون to می آید.

---Would you rather stay here or go home?

توجه داشته باشید که این فعل در بسیاری از موارد به صورت مخفف بکار می رود.

---I'd rather stay at home and rest.

گاهی اوقات فاعل قبل و بعد از would rather یکسان نیستند در این صورت بعد از would rather ساده استفاده می شود:

---I would rather you drove the car.

---She would rather her husband washed the dishes.

چنانچه بخواهیم عملی را بر عملی دیگر ترجیح دهیم فعل دوم هم بصورت مصدر بدون to بعد از than می آید.

---I would rather stay at home **than go** to the meeting.

اگر بخواهیم would rather را در زمان گذشته بکار ببریم از فرمول زیر استفاده می کنیم.

Would rather + have + p.p.

---I would rather have gone to mosque last night.

Had better

به معنی بهتر بودن و جهت توصیه یا پیشنهاد به کار می رود و فعل بعد از آن بصورت مصدر بدون to می آید.

---You 'd better (= had better) turn that music down before your dad gets angry.

برای منفی کردن آن هم not باید به had better اضافه کرد:

---You had better not tell him the truth.

Past Modals:

Subject + could + have + p.p. + ...

ساختار فوق بیانگر انجام کاری است که در گذشته می‌توانسته انجام پذیرد، اما انجام نیذیرفته.

---I had a lot of money and could have bought a car.

پول زیادی داشتم و می‌توانستم یک ماشین بخرم (اما نخریدم)

---He could have passed the exam.

می‌توانست در امتحان قبول شود. (اما نشد)

Subject + should + have + p.p. + ...

ساختار فوق بیانگر انجام کاری است که در گذشته می‌بایستی انجام می‌شده اما انجام نشده است.

---She should have gone there last week.

او باید هفته گذشته آنجا می‌رفت (اما نرفت)

---My friend needed my help. I didn't help him. I should have helped him.

دوستم به کمک من احتیاج داشت. به او کمک نکردم. باید به او کمک می‌کردم. (اما کمک نکردم)

Subject + shouldn't + have + p.p. + ...

این ساختار برای بیان کاری استفاده می‌شود که نبایست انجام می‌شده، اما انجام شده است.

---Adam loved Mary, but he married Nancy; now he is unhappy. He shouldn't have married Nancy. He should have married Mary.

---You shouldn't have treated him like a child.

شما نباید با او مثل بچه رفتار می‌کردید (اما رفتار کردید)

Subject + may/might + have + p.p. + ...

این ساختار بیانگر احتمال ضعیف انجام کار در زمان گذشته می‌باشد که طبق الگوی زیر عمل می‌کنیم:

---I can't find my keys. I may/might have left them at home.

---It might have rained in Tehran last week.

و بصورت منفی:

---Everybody was in the party except Rosa; she may not have been invited.

Subject + must + have + p.p.+...

این ساختار برای نشان دادن **نتیجه منطقی (استنتاج)** از یک موقعیت استفاده می شود. مثلاً صبح که از خواب بیدار می شوید، می بینید که خیابان ها خیس هستند، نتیجه می گیرید که باران باریده است.

---It must have rained.

---John fell asleep in class.

---He must have stayed up too late last night.

or

---He must not have slept well last night.

مثال دیگر:

---Jim was eating everything in the salad but the onions.

---He must not have liked the onions.

---The river is frozen, so it must have been very cold last night.

رودخانه یخ زده است، بنابراین دیشب بایستی خیلی هوا سرده بوده باشد.

---He spent money like water. He must have had lots of money.

او مثل ریگ پول خرج می کند. باید خیلی پول داشته باشد.

(spend money like water اصطلاحی است در زبان انگلیسی به معنای مثل ریگ پول خرج کردن.)

نکته مهم: توجه داشته باشید که در تمام ساختارهای فوق، برای منفی کردن not به افعال مدال اضافه می شود.

مجهول ساختارهای فوق:

NP + could/should/must/may/might + have + been + p.p.

به مثالهای زیر توجه کنید:

---This picture is a masterpiece. It must have been drawn by a great artist.

---The car is not in the parking. It may/might have been stolen.

---We have many important guests today. The house should have been cleaned.

و در صورتی که کاری استمرار داشته باشد، بعد از ساختارهای گفته شده فعل به صورت ing فرم به کار می رود:

Subject + might/may/must/could + have + been + Ving

---Jack had an accident last night. He must have been driving carelessly.

Can't have + past participle

Can't have + past participle is used when we are sure that something did not happen in the past.

"He can't have been at the meeting, he's on a business trip this week."

"They can't have bought it today because the shops are closed."

Used to/be used to: *

1. When I was a child I ... go swimming in the lake.

used to

am used to

2. I ... in front of an audience. I am a teacher.

used to speak

am used to speaking

3. As a father I ... the mess my children make every evening.

used to clean up

am used to cleaning up

4. In the army I ... at six every morning.

used to get up

am used to getting up

5. My grandmother ... 5 miles to go to church on Sundays.

used to walk

is used to walking

6. Anderlecht ... the best Belgian players. Nowadays they cannot afford that any longer.

used to attract

is used to attracting

7. I ... the paper after lunch. That's one of the things I really enjoy.

used to read

am used to reading

8. In Spain you will soon ... a siesta in the afternoon.

used to take

get used to taking

9. On holiday in Finland my wife ... a sauna every day!

used to take

is used to taking

10. After all this time, I have become quite ... this program.

used to operate

used to operating

Tests:

1. Everything outside is frozen. It very cold last night then.

1. must be 2. must have been 3. should be 4. should have been

2. After the accident, the little boy was immediately taken to hospital. He seriously injured.
 1. must be 2. should be 3. should have been 4. must have been
3. I didn't know what had happened. He have been here by then.
 1. ought 2. might 3. should 4. would
4. "Why didn't you let her buy what she wanted?"
 "You her like a child yesterday."
 1. shouldn't treat 2. mustn't have treated
 3. shouldn't have treated 4. mustn't treat
5. Why didn't you take the University Entrance Examination?
 You have passed it easily.
 1. could 2. must 3. should 4. would
6. What a beautiful painting! It by a famous painter.
 1. must have painted
 2. must have been painted
 3. should have been painted
 4. should have painted
7. I at the Pars Hotel when I was in Ahwaz, but I stayed at the Grand Hotel.
 1. could stay 2. must stay
 3. could have stayed 4. must have stayed
8. Jack had a car accident last night, he have been driving carelessly.
 1. could 2. should 3. must 4. would
9. The host was rich and more and better food for the guests, but he didn't.
 1. could prepare 2. could have prepared
 3. must have prepared 4. must prepare
10. Why did you leave the door of the house open last night? Somebody in.
 1. Should have come 2. must come
 3. could have come 4. should come
11. My friend, Reza, failed in his driving test. He more.
 1. must practice 2. must have practiced
 3. should have practiced 4. should practice
12. I don't exactly know where I put my bag. I have left it in the classroom or somewhere else.
 1. must 2. might 3. should 4. would
13. I sent a telegram to our uncle a few days ago. He have received it by now.
 1. could 2. should 3. would 4. must

14. Yesterday was sunny and suitable for going to the seaside. We swimming, but we preferred to stay at home and relax.

- | | |
|---------------------|--------------|
| 1. could have gone | 2. should go |
| 3. should have gone | 4. could go |

15. The glasses aren't in my pocket and I don't know what happened to them. I them somewhere.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|---------------------|--------------------|----------------|
| 1. should leave | 2. should have left | 3. might have left | 4. might leave |
|-----------------|---------------------|--------------------|----------------|

16. You missed the train because you walked to the station. You a taxi or a bus.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|--------------|----------------|----------------------|
| 1. must have taken | 2. must take | 3. should take | 4. should have taken |
|--------------------|--------------|----------------|----------------------|

17. You had sufficient money and an expensive watch. Why did you buy a cheap one?

- | | | | |
|----------------------|--------------|---------------|---------------------|
| 1. could have bought | 2. would buy | 3. should buy | 4. must have bought |
|----------------------|--------------|---------------|---------------------|

18. They wonder why Jane didn't come to the meeting. She have forgotten about it.

- | | | | |
|-----------|----------|-----------|----------|
| 1. has to | 2. might | 3. should | 4. would |
|-----------|----------|-----------|----------|

19. When I woke up this morning, the light was on. Someone have forgotten to turn it off.

- | | | | |
|----------|-----------|----------|---------|
| 1. could | 2. should | 3. would | 4. must |
|----------|-----------|----------|---------|

20. George went to work in his own car this morning. So, his car..... down last night.

- | | |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. can't break | 2. mustn't have broken |
| 3. shouldn't have broken | 4. shouldn't break |

21. She have stayed with her sister but she didn't.

- | | | | |
|----------|---------|----------|----------|
| 1. would | 2. must | 3. might | 4. could |
|----------|---------|----------|----------|

22. When he asked me about it, I him the truth but for some reason I didn't.

- | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1. would have told | 2. might have told |
| 3. must have told | 4. could have told |

23. This is the second pen you lost this week. You have been more careful.

- | | | | |
|----------|----------|-----------|----------|
| 1. could | 2. might | 3. should | 4. would |
|----------|----------|-----------|----------|

24. You my grandmother, she died before you were born.

- | | |
|-------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. couldn't meet | 2. couldn't have met |
| 3. shouldn't meet | 4. shouldn't have met |

25. My mother didn't leave the house in the morning. She thought somebody have visited her.

- | | | | |
|--------|---------|-----------|----------|
| 1. may | 2. must | 3. should | 4. would |
|--------|---------|-----------|----------|

26. A: "I wonder why the physics teacher didn't come to the meeting."

B: "He about it."

- | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. shouldn't have known | 2. can't have known |
| 3. could have known | 4. might not have known |

27. The party was great. You why didn't you?
1. should have come
 2. might have come
 3. shouldn't have come
 4. must have stayed
28. Amy caught a bad cold last night. She in the rain for a long time .
1. must stay
 2. should say
 3. would have stayed
 4. must have stayed
29. A: "Ali said he had failed in the exam." B: "He harder last semester."
1. must study
 2. should study
 3. should have studied
 4. must have studied
30. He her aunt to the airport if his car had not been stolen.
1. must drive
 2. could drive
 3. could have driven
 4. must have driven
31. You missed a great birthday party last night, you come.
1. could
 2. had to
 3. must have
 4. should have
32. Reza, youin bed at least for a week! Why didn't you?
1. must stay
 2. should stay
 3. must have stayed
 4. should have stayed
33. A: "Did your friend, David, decide to get a job?"
B: "He to get a job; I am not sure."
1. might have decided
 2. must have decided
 3. should have decided
 4. could have decided
34. A: "Do you know where Ali left the car keys?"
B: "He..... them on the table; I'm not sure."
1. must have left
 2. should have left
 3. might have left
 4. would have left
35. I wonder why Jane didn't come to the party. She
1. must not have invited
 2. might not be invited
 3. might have not been invited
 4. might not have been invited
36. A: "I'm looking for Tom. Do you know where he is?"
B: " He..... have gone out."
1. would
 2. might
 3. have to
 4. could
37. A: "Where's Jane? I haven't seen her for a week."
B: "I'm not sure. She somewhere."
1. should travel
 2. might travel
 3. might have traveled
 4. should have traveled

38. A: "Where is that cold air coming from?"

B: "Someone have left the door open."

1. should 2. must 3. would 4. could

39. A: "Shall I buy this book for my son?"

B: "You'd better not . He it."

1. would have already read 2. should have already read
3. might have already read 4. could have already read

40. A: "There's a lot of food leftover from the party, isn't there?"

B: "Yes, you..... so many sandwiches."

1. shouldn't have made 2. couldn't have made
3. might not have made 4. wouldn't have made

41. The ring that I was looking at is gone; someone else.....it.

1. should have bought 2. would have bought
3. could have bought 4. must have bought

پاسخ تست ها

۱	۲، استنتاج منطقی انجام کار
۲	۴، استنتاج منطقی
۳	۳، باید انجام می گرفته اما انجام نگرفته است.
۴	۳، کاری که نباید انجام می گرفته ولی انجام گرفته است
۵	۱، کاری که در گذشته می توانسته انجام پذیرد ولی صورت نگرفته است.
۶	۲، استنتاج منطقی
۷	۳، کاری که در گذشته می توانسته انجام پذیرد ولی صورت نگرفته است.
۸	۳، رجوع شود به تست ۳
۹	۲، رجوع شود به تست ۵
۱۰	۳، رجوع شود به تست ۵
۱۱	۳، رجوع شود به تست ۳
۱۲	۲، بیانگر احتمال ضعیف انجام کاری در گذشته.
۱۳	۴، رجوع شود به تست ۱
۱۴	۱، رجوع شود به تست ۵
۱۵	۳، رجوع شود به تست ۱۲
۱۶	۴، رجوع شود به تست ۳
۱۷	۱، رجوع شود به تست ۵
۱۸	۲، احتمال
۱۹	۴، رجوع شود به تست ۱
۲۰	۲، رجوع شود به تست ۱
۲۱	۴، رجوع شود به تست ۵
۲۲	۴، رجوع شود به تست ۵

۲۳	۳، رجوع شود به تست ۲
۲۴	۲
۲۵	۱
۲۶	۴، رجوع شود به تست ۱۲
۲۷	۱، رجوع شود به تست ۳
۲۸	۴، رجوع شود به تست ۱
۲۹	۳، رجوع شود به تست ۳
۳۰	۳، رجوع شود به تست ۵
۳۱	۴، رجوع شود به تست ۳
۳۲	۴، رجوع شود به تست ۳
۳۳	۱، رجوع شود به تست ۱۲
۳۴	۳، رجوع شود به تست ۱۲
۳۵	۴، رجوع شود به تست ۱۲، توجه داشته باشید که هنگام منفی کردن این ساختارها not به افعال مدال اضافه می شود نه به have.
۳۶	۲، رجوع شود به تست ۱۲
۳۷	۳، رجوع شود به تست ۱۲
۳۸	۲، رجوع شود به تست ۱
۳۹	۳، رجوع شود به تست ۱۲
۴۰	۱، رجوع شود به تست ۳
۴۱	۴، رجوع شود به تست ۱

Tests:

1. When they were in Japan, theyspeak either Japanese or English.

1. had to 2. have to 3. must 4. should

2. You look pale. You.....sick.

1. should be 2. would be 3. can be 4. must be

3. Mrs. Amini is absent today, sheill.

1. should be 2. must be 3. can be 4. will be

4. The teacher would rather the students in the class.

1. study 2. studies 3. studied 4. studying

5. People..... obey the traffic laws, otherwise they will have accident.

1. can 2. might 3. must 4. would

6. You should..... your shoes every day.

1. clean 2. to clean 3. cleaning 4. cleans

7. He had tohis car alone because nobody helped him.

1. washing 2. to wash 3. wash 4. washed

8. The line is busy, someone.....be using the telephone.

1. can 2. must 3. ought to 4. should

9. Froebel couldn'tthings with his hands.

1. did 2. do 3. does 4. doing

10. Friedrich..... sit on a hard chair.

1. must 2. should 3. had to 4. would

11. They shouldbooks with pretty pictures.

1. have to 2. have 3. to have 4. had

12. Mary couldn't English 3 years ago.

1. speaking 2. to speak 3. had spoken 4. speak

13. I don't mind walking home, but I would rather a taxi.

1. take 2. took 3. taking 4. to take

14. "Shall I take an umbrella?" "Yes, it might rain."

1. you'd rather 2. you had to
3. you should have 4. you'd better

15. You caught a bad cold. You'd better at home for a few days.

1. to stay 2. staying 3. stayed 4. stay

16. He is used English very hard.

1. study 2. to studying 3. studying 4. to study

17. "Where is your father now?"

"He drove to Shiraz yesterday morning. He there by now."

1. could be 2. ought to be 3. must be 4. should be

18. When my brother was at school he used to well.

1. swam 2. swim 3. swimming 4. is swimming

19. Mohsen study hard to pass the University Entrance Exam last month.

1. had to 2. hast to 3. must 4. should

20. The car broke down and we a taxi.

1. could get 2. had to get
3. should have gotten 4. must have gotten

21. A: Patrick a lot of girlfriends before he got married.

1. use to have 2. used to have
3. was used to have 4. is used to having

22. Look! Those people who are coming in the door are carrying wet umbrellas. It
 1. must rain 2. may rain 3. must be raining 4. must have rained
23. A: "Why is Milad in his room?"
 B: "I don't know. Hehis homework."
 1. may do 2. may be doing 3. must do 4. must be doing
24. "Do you go to Isfahan?"
 "I would like very much to have a trip to Isfahan, but I not be able to."
 1. could 2. must 3. might 4. should

پاسخ تست ها

- ۱- ۱، زمان گذشته جمله
 ۲- ۴، must نتیجه منطقی را نشان می دهد.
 ۳- ۲
 ۴- ۳ فاعل قبل و بعد از would rather یکسان است.
 ۵- ۳، must بیانگر ضرورت و وظیفه نیز می باشد.
 ۶- ۱ بعد از افعال کمکی فعل بصورت مصدرزدون to می آید.
 ۷- ۳، بعد از had to فعل بصورت مصدرزدون to می آید.
 ۸- ۲، نتیجه منطقی
 ۹- ۲
 ۱۰- ۳ زمان گذشته است.
 ۱۱- ۲
 ۱۲- ۴
 ۱۳- ۱، بعد از would rather فعل بصورت مصدرزدون to می آید.
 ۱۴- ۴
 ۱۵- ۴، بعد از had better فعل بصورت مصدرزدون to می آید.
 ۱۶- ۲، بعد از be used to فعل بصورت ing می آید.
 ۱۷- ۳
 ۱۸- ۲، بعد از used to فعل بصورت مصدرزدون to می آید.
 ۱۹- ۱، بخاطر زمان گذشته جمله
 ۲۰- ۲، زمان گذشته است و چون حالت اجبار وجود دارد.
 ۲۱- ۲
 ۲۲- ۳، نتیجه گیری از یک موقعیت و استمرار در زمان حال
 ۲۳- ۲، استمرار در زمان حال (چون گوینده مطمئن نیست استفاده از must صحیح نیست).
 ۲۴- ۳

Tests:

1. When I was younger, I run five kilometers every day, but now I have to take frequent rests when I try to do the same thing.
 a. could b. should be able to c. have got to d. can e. am able to

2. She hasn't eaten anything since yesterday. She be really very hungry now!

- a. can b. would c. must d. might e. needn't

3. "Why are you late?"

"I my uncle to the bus terminal. There was so much traffic that it took me much longer than it usually does."

- a. had to take b. must have taken c. have got to take d. should have taken
e. should take

4. "Do you think the teacher will give us a pop quiz today?"

"He, but I don't really think so."

- a. will b. might c. would d. should e. needs

5. "Do I have to take that Math course?"

"No, you"

- a. haven't b. don't have c. mustn't d. ought to e. needn't

6. You a two-year old child at home alone. Anything can happen.

- a. didn't leave b. mustn't leave c. don't have to d. needn't leave e. need to

7. He worked hard yesterday, so he.....the project.

- a. could finish b. would have finished c. might finish d. was able to finish
e. can finish

8. It's only a little way to the station, so we walk as well.

- a. can b. will c. shouldn't d. might e. mustn't

9. Hello Mary! I cannot be sure I'll be home in time for dinner. I be late, so don't wait for me.

- a. may b. will c. should d. must e. should

10. "Do you think it was Ali we saw earlier?"

"It but I am not sure."

- a. would be b. may have been c. might be d. must have e. could be

11. When I was young, I a sports magazine regularly, but I don't anymore.

- a. used to buying b. used to buy c. was used to buy d. get used to buy

12. "Ali got the highest grade in the history exam."

"He very hard before the exam."

- a. should have studied b. ought to have studied c. must have studied d. might study

13. "I am sure she has forgotten something"

- a. She must have forgotten something
b. She could have forgotten something.
c. She should have forgotten something
d. She ought to forgotten something.

e. She might have forgotten something.

14. I don't believe it's ten o'clock.

- a. It mustn't be ten o'clock.
- b. It shouldn't be ten o'clock.
- c. It needn't be ten o'clock.
- d. It couldn't be ten o'clock.
- e. It cannot be ten o'clock.

15. She apologized but it wasn't necessary.

- a. She didn't need to apologize
- b. She needn't have apologized.
- c. She must have apologized.
- d. She might have apologized.
- e. She could have apologized.

16. We didn't call the police because it was unnecessary.

- a. We needn't have called the police.
- b. We should have called the police.
- c. We could have called the police.
- d. We cannot have called the police.
- e. We didn't need to call the police.

17. I was wrong to say that it was your fault.

- a. I mustn't have said it.
- b. I mightn't have said it.
- c. I shouldn't have said it.
- d. I didn't need to say it.
- e. I cannot have said it.

18. He cannot have passed his driving test.

- a. It was impossible for him to pass his driving test.
- b. He shouldn't have passed his driving test.
- c. It is not possible for him to pass his driving test.
- d. He mustn't have passed his driving test.
- e. He mightn't have passed his driving test.

19. A: "What's that noise?" B: "Don't worry. Itmy cat playing in the kitchen."

- a. must have been b. must be c. should be d. could have been

20. Look what you have done! You have broken all my glasses. Youmore careful.

- a. can have been b. must have been c. would have been
- d. should have been

21. He was a good swimmer and.....swim to the riverbank when the boat sank.

- a. could b. was able to c. might d. might be able to

22. My dictionary is not in its place; someone it.
a. should take b. can take c. might take d. must have taken e. ought to take
23. I travel by coach to Istanbul last week because the airline pilots were on strike.
a. ought to b. need to c. had to d. am to e. should to
24. You your doctor before you started dieting.
a. might consult b. have to consult c. should have consulted d. have consulted e. have consulted
25. You wear jeans or trainers at a formal gathering. It wouldn't be right.
a. needn't b. don't have to c. mightn't d. weren't able to e. mustn't
26. Our guests are supposed here before eight o'clock.
a. to be b. was c. been d. being
27. "What will you do after school is over."
"I work for a year, but I haven't decided yet."
a. will b. might c. should d. need
28. "Did Alper go to the movies last night?"
"Yes, but he have studied at home and studied his lessons."
a. may b. should c. must d. can
29. I would rather to Antalya than Istanbul for my holiday.
a. went b. gone c. going d. go
30. "Ali has pictures of Michael Jackson all over his walls."
"He like the singer very much."
a. can b. will c. must d. may
31. "There was some cake in the dish, but it's gone. I wonder what happened to it?"
"I don't know. My younger sister it."
a. had to eat b. ought to have eaten c. might eat d. may have eaten
32. "I am absolutely sure that the money was not stolen by Peter. Such an honest man as Peter such a disgraceful thing in any way."
a. mustn't have done b. shouldn't have done c. may not have done
d. could not do
33. You shouldn't have walked about the city alone. You
a. might get lost b. would have gotten lost c. might have gotten lost
d. could get lost
34. The milkman looks like a snowman. It heavily outside.

a. will be snowing b. should be snowing c. may be snowing d. must be snowing

35. It's getting dark, we'd better now or father will get very angry.

a. leave b. left c. will leave d. leaving

36. "The cold weather doesn't seem to bother you."

"Before I came to Ankara, I live in Kars, which is one of the coldest places in Turkey."

a. would rather live b. would live c. ought to leave d. used to live

37. " ... you close the window, please?"

"Certainly."

a. Will b. May c. Shall d. Do

38. "Did you enjoy the opera?"

"It was okay, but I'd rather to the cinema."

a. went b. have gone c. had gone d. go

39. If you don't want to get wet, you had better.....this umbrella with you.

a. take b. to take c. taken d. for taking

40. I know it's none of my business but I wondering where he gets all his money from.

a. cannot help b. cannot bear c. cannot ask d. cannot afford

Tag questions:

این جملات معمولا برای گرفتن تایید از مخاطب استفاده می شوند مثال هوا گرم است مگر نه؟ (این طور نیست؟).

۱- فعل کمکی زمان جمله را می آوریم . چنانچه جمله مثبت باشد فعل کمکی به صورت منفی و اگر جمله منفی باشد، فعل

دوقطب

کمکی را به صورت مثبت می نویسیم . یعنی مانند

-	+
---	---

+	-
---	---

باطری عمل می کنند.

۲- فاعل جمله را ذکر می کنیم. (حتما باید از ضمیر فاعلی استفاده شود)

۳- در صورتی که طرف انتهایی جمله (قسمت tag question) منفی باشد باید **not بصورت مخفف** به کار رود.

---She studies English every day, **doesn't she?**

---Mary and Nancy don't get up at 7 every day, **do they?**

---we never go to picnic on Fridays, **do we?**

---I can play the violin, **can't I?**

---Few students attended in the class today, **did they?**

---He has finished his studies, **hasn't she?**

---Ali has to study hard, **doesn't he?**

نکته: اگر در جمله اصلی قیود منفی مانند *never, seldom, hardly* و یا صفات و مفاهیم منفی مانند *few, little, no, nobody,* بیاید جمله سوالی کوتاه بصورت مثبت می آید.

نکته: سوال کوتاه در جمله زیر استثنا می باشد.

---I am late, **aren't I?**

یا

---I am late, **am I not?**

نکته: در جملات امری معمولا از *won't you* استفاده می شود تا این که مودبانه از کسی خواسته شود تا کاری انجام دهد (مخصوصا در انگلیسی بریتانیایی)

---Come in, **won't you?**

از *will/would/can/could/you?* نیز می توان استفاده نمود تا این که از کسی خواسته شود تا کاری انجام دهد:

---Give me a hand, **will you?**

---Open a window, **would you?**

Can't you بیان کننده ناشکیبایی / نارضایتی گوینده گوینده است:

---Shut up, **can't you?**

و در صورتی که جمله امری منفی (نهی) باشد، از will you? استفاده می شود:

---Don't forget, **will you?**

نکته: برای let's از shall we? استفاده می شود.

---Let's have a party, **shall we?**

نکته: چنانچه فعل اصلی to be (am, is, are, was, were) باشد احتیاج به فعل کمکی نیست و از خود آنها استفاده می شود.

---The film wasn't very good, **was** it?

نکته: اگر فاعل جمله nothing یا every thing باشد در قسمت سؤال کوتاه به جای آنها از it استفاده می شود.

---Nothing can happen, **can it?**

---Everything is Ok, **isn't it?**

نکته: اگر فاعل جمله nobody, somebody, anybody, everybody باشد در قسمت سؤال کوتاه به جای آنها از they استفاده می شود:

---Nobody found the keys, **did they?**

---Somebody wanted a drink, **didn't they?**

نکته: در صورتی که در قسمت اصلی جمله ought to باشد در قسمت tag از should استفاده می کنیم:

---I **ought to** complain, **shouldn't I?**

Tests:

1. Mehdi's bicycle costs a lot, it?

1. didn't 2. did 3. does 4. doesn't

2. Mehdi rarely works hard,?

1. does he 2. did he 3. doesn't he 4. doesn't Mehdi

3. Many candidates have taken the placement test, they?

1. have 2. haven't 3. has 4. hasn't

4. The students never go to school on Fridays, they?

1. didn't 2. id 3. do 4. don't

5. Everybody wants to find a good job, ?

1. aren't they 2. isn't he 3. don't they 4. doesn't he

6. One of these girls works very hard, ?

1. doesn't she 2. aren't they 3. isn't she 4. don't they

7. You could tell the truth as soon as you were asked, you?

1. needn't 2. didn't 3. wouldn't 4. couldn't

8. You'd better see a doctor if you don't feel well, you?

1. had 2. hadn't 3. would 4. wouldn't

9. There were a lot of players in the playground at 8 o'clock, ?

1. were there 2. weren't there 3. were they 4. weren't they

10. Your English teacher never speaks Persian in class, he?

1. does 2. doesn't 3. is 4. isn't

11. The police never found the money stolen in the robbery, ?

1. didn't he 2. did he 3. didn't they 4. did they

12. If you were rich, you would help the poor and the needy,you?

1. were 2. wouldn't 3. would 4. weren't

13. Oppressors can't be the final winners, they?

1. will 2. won't 3. can 4. aren't

14. You should listen to his father patiently, ?

1. you should 2. should you 3. you shouldn't 4. shouldn't you

15. You needn't go there any more, you?

1. needn't 2. don't 3. do 4. need

16. There was a river in which we could swim,.....?

1. wasn't it 2. couldn't we 3. wasn't there 4. couldn't you

17. I think that he's made a bad mistake,.....?

1. don't I 2. isn't he 3. doesn't he 4. hasn't he

18. She almost never studied,..... she?

1. doesn't 2. did 3. is 4. didn't

19. He'd never met her before,..... he?

No, that was the first time.

1. hadn't 2. had 3. has 4. hasn't

20. Your brother's friend let you ride his bicycle,.....he?

1. did 2. didn't 3. does 4. doesn't

21. You need to work hard for much money, you?

1. need 2. needn't 3. don't 4. do

22. The teacher put Ali's book on the desk,he?

1. did 2. didn't 3. does 4. doesn't

23. Mehdi's bicycle cost a lot, it?

1. didn't 2. did 3. does 4. doesn't

24. You ought to walk every day, you?

1. ought not 2. shouldn't 3. oughtn't 4. won't

25. you are driving me mad. Please be quiet, you?

1. can 2. can't 3. will 4. do

26. It's a secret. Don't tell anybody,you?

1. can 2. can't 3. will 4. do

Causative Structure:

Have/Get + object + past participle

This structure can be used to talk about arranging for things to be done by other people. The past participle has a passive meaning.

---I must have/get my watch repaired. (= I want my watch to be repaired.)

---If you don't get out of my house I'll have/get you arrested.

---They had/ got their apartment built.

---She had/ got her car washed.

Have + subject + infinitive without to

---I had a painter *paint* the room.

---He had a mechanic *repair* his car.

Get + subject + infinitive with to

---I got a painter *to paint* the room.

---He got a mechanic *to repair* his car.

Tests:

1. The little girl her mother to knit her a sweater.

1. got 2. let 3. had 4. saw

2. Maria had her eyes

1. be examined 2. examine 3. examined 4. to examine

3. "Did you repair the tape-recorder yourself?"

"No, I got the repairman it."

1. to do 2. do 3. done 4. to have done

4. I'm going to have my shirt

1. press 2. pressed 3. presses 4. to press

5. "Why are you going to the doctor?" "I'm going to have my eyes"

1. to examine 2. examining 3. examined 4. examination

6. I'm going to have the dentist my teeth.

1. clean 2. cleans 3. to clean 4. cleaned

7. A. "Did he build that table himself? B. "No, he it"

1. had, built 2. had, build 3. has, build 4. has, built

8. I am going to have my picture

1. take 2. taken 3. taking 4. to take

9. A: "Why did you take your coat to the cleaner's?" B: "..... ."

1. To have cleaned it. 2. to clean it.
3. to be cleaning it 4. to have it cleaned

10. "What happened to George?" "He had his nose in a fight".

1. break 2. broke 3. broken 4. breaking

11. A: "Can I see the photographs you took when you were on holiday?"

B: "I'm afraid. I yet."

1. haven't had developed the film 2. haven't had the film develop
3. haven't had the film developed 4. haven't had the film to develop

12. I must have another room in our house for my son, Hamid.

1. builds 2. building 3. built 4. to build

13. My coat is dirty. I

1. must have it to clean 2. must get it clean
3. must have it cleaned 4. must get it to clean

14. I could finally have my watch last week.

1. repair 2. repaired 3. repairing 4. to repair

15. The manager is going to have a painter the front of his office.

1. paint 2. to paint 3. painted 4. painting

16. Mina thinks her dress is a little too long, so she plans to get it

1. shorten 2. shortened 3. be shortened 4. to have shortened

17. Mary had someone her diploma to French .

1. translate 2. translating 3. to translate 4. translated

18. Which item is wrong:

She is going to have her watch repair tomorrow.

a b c d

19. An American literary legend, Tom Sawyer was able to get his friends paint the
 A B
 fence by pretending that the chore to be done was a special privilege.
 C D

پاسخ تست های جملات سببی

- ۱، جمله سببی معلوم، پس از got مصدر با to به کار می رود. ۱
- ۳، جمله سببی مجهول ۲
- ۱، جمله سببی معلوم ۳
- ۲، جمله سببی مجهول ۴
- ۳، جمله سببی مجهول ۵
- ۱، جمله سببی معلوم ۶
- ۱، جمله سببی مجهول ۷
- ۲، جمله سببی مجهول ۸
- ۴، جمله سببی مجهول، به این صورت بوده: I took it to the cleaner's to have it cleaned. ۹
- ۳، جمله سببی مجهول ۱۰
- ۳، جمله سببی مجهول ۱۱
- ۳، جمله سببی مجهول ۱۲
- ۳، جمله سببی مجهول ۱۳
- ۲، جمله سببی مجهول ۱۴
- ۱، جمله سببی معلوم ۱۵
- ۲، جمله سببی مجهول ۱۶
- ۱، جمله سببی معلوم ۱۷
- ۳، جمله سببی مجهول ۱۸

Phrases to Avoid Repetition:

هر گاه دو فاعل مختلف کار مشترکي را انجام داده باشند (جمله مثبت باشد) از ساختارهاي زیر استفاده مي کنيم.

فاعل جمله دوم + فعل کمکي زمان جمله + and + so + جمله اول

---Ali studies physics. Babak studies physics.

---Ali studies physics and **so does Babak**.

---Andy went to the theater yesterday. Mary went to the theater yesterday.

---Andy went to the theater yesterday and **so did Mary**.

too + فعل کمکي زمان جمله + فاعل جمله دوم + and + جمله اول

---Alice can speak French well. Mike can speak French well.

---Alice can speak French well and **Mike can too**.

---Bob has worked on the problem for 4 hours. Ben has worked on the problem for 4 hours.

---Bob has worked on the problem for 4 hours and **Ben has too**.

هر گاه دو فاعل مختلف کار مشترکي را انجام نداده باشند (جمله منفي باشد) از ساختارهاي زیر استفاده مي کنيم.

---They haven't lived in Germany since 1992. I haven't lived in Germany since 1992.

فاعل جمله دوم + فعل کمکي (مثبت) زمان جمله + and + neither/ nor + جمله اول (بصورت منفي)

---They haven't lived in Germany since 1992 and **neither have I**.

---They never get up at 7 every morning. We never get up at 7 every morning.

---They never get up at 7 every morning and **neither do we**.

either + فعل کمکي (منفي) زمان جمله + فاعل جمله دوم + and + جمله اول (بصورت منفي)

- She doesn't have a car. He doesn't have a car.
- She doesn't have a car, and he **doesn't either**.
- They seldom play football, we seldom play football.
- They seldom play football, and we **don't either**.

Tests:

1. Reza doesn't study well, and Hamid doesn't
 1. neither 2. either 3. so 4. too
2. I don't like to play tennis, does he.
 1. either 2. also 3. neither 4. too
3. Ahmad doesn't like to study and I don't
 1. also 2. either 3. neither 4. too
4. They won't go to the store, and I
 1. neither 2. so will 3. won't either 4. will too
5. We did not go to their party and did my friend.
 1. so 2. too 3. also 4. nor
6. I fought for my country and before me.
 1. neither my father did 2. nor my father did
 3. so my father 4. so did my father
7. "Fund- raising drive was a success."
 "Yes, Mr. Smith gave a thousand dollars and"
 1. did so 2. so did I 3. I did give too 4. I also did give
8. You know, my husband doesn't like shrimp. My husband
 1. does either 2. doesn't either 3. did too 4. doesn't too
9. A: "Jane doesn't want to go to the meeting tonight." "B:"
 1. I am too 2. so do I 3. I am not either 4. neither do I
10. Mahdi might not be here tomorrow, and Mohsen might not
 1. either 2. neither 3. so 4. too
11. I won't be eager to go there,
 1. nor will John be 2. nor will be John
 3. nor John will be 4. John will be nor
12. Coffee contains caffeine, and

Wish Clauses

---I wish I had a car.

---Mina wishes she hadn't bothered her mother.

---The teacher wishes the students would stop talking so much in the class.

➡➡➡ If we have this structure, some points must be observed:

Subject + wish + subject...

۱- چنانچه آرزو مربوط به زمان حال باشد بعد از I wish جمله را به صورت گذشته ساده به کار می‌بریم:

---I wish I knew how to solve the problem.

---She wishes she had a car.

در جملات آرزویی برای تمام ضمائر از **were** استفاده می‌شود.

---I wish he were here now.

---I wish I were rich.

---Ali wishes he were young.

۲- چنانچه آرزو مربوط به زمان گذشته باشد بعد از I wish جمله بصورت گذشته کامل (ماضی بعید) بکار می‌رود.

---I wish I had passed the exam last month.

۳- چنانچه آرزو مربوط به چیزهایی باشد که خارج از کنترل شخص باشد بعد از I wish جمله بصورت آینده در گذشته بکار می‌رود. (یعنی از مدالهایی مثل would یا could استفاده می‌شود)

---I wish it would rain tomorrow.

نکته: پس از عبارتهای wish جمله هیچگاه به زمان حال و آینده بکار نمی‌رود.

نکته: چنانچه بعد از فعل wish بلافاصله فعل یا مفعول بکار برده شود فعل بعد از آن بصورت مصدر با to به کار می‌رود.

---I wish to have an expensive car.

Tests:

1. I wish heme the truth earlier.

1. had told 2. has told 3. told 4. were told

2. Ahmad's mother is sick. I wish she.....better.

1. feels 2. felt 3. has felt 4. had felt

3. When I was younger, I wished I an airplane.

1. had 2. had had 3. have had 4. would have

4. Wherever there was an iceberg we wished the radarit before.

1. showed 2. had shown 3. would show 4. has show

5. Last week a thief found the opportunity to steal my bicycle.

I wish hethe chance.

1. hasn't had 2. hadn't had 3. didn't have 4. couldn't have

6. My father wasn't rich enough to buy me a bicycle when I was a child.

I wish he

1. was 2. were 3. had been 4. has been

7. My friend, Mahdi, lives far away in the country. I wish hein the city.

1. has lived 2. had lived 3. lived 4. lives

8. He wished hethe money to buy the car the other day.

1. didn't borrow 2. wouldn't borrow
3. hasn't borrow 4. hadn't borrowed

9. I wish youme about the accident in the morning.

1. told 2. had told 3. would tell 4. would have told

10. I wish Iwith John today.

1. talk 2. could talk 3. would have talked 4. could have talked

11. My classmate needed some money. I wish Iable to lend him some.

1. was 2. had been 3. were 4. have been

12. Ali: "Have you ever been to England?"

Reza: "No, but I wish Iin England now."

1. was 2. have been 3. were 4. have been

13. "Did you write the letter?"

"No, but Peter wishes Ithe letter last week."

1. had written 2. wrote 3. have written 4. write

14. My friend is leaving. I wish he.....longer with us.

1. had stayed 2. could stay 3. has stayed 4. stayed

15. Our neighbors are very friendly but I wish the apartmenta little bigger.

1. were 2. was 3. would be 4. had been

16. Mr. Johns isn't very patient. I wish heour problems better.

1. understands 2. understood 3. understand 4. will understand

17. I didn't see the football match between Italy and Germany, I wish I

1. did 2. do 3. had 4. have

18. They are not here, I

1. wish they were 2. wish they are
3. wish they have been 4. wished they had been

19. I wish Ia big house.

1. have 2. shall have 3. had 4. have had

20. The weather is awful. I wish it.....rain.

1. didn't 2. doesn't 3. won't 4. wouldn't

21- I wish we.....out tonight.

1. won't go 2. haven't gone 3. didn't go 4. don't go

22- A. "Oh! My God, I'm so sleepy."

B. "Me too. I wish we.....the party."

1. leave 2. will leave 3. had left 4. could leave

23- I believe that the exam is hard. I wish it.....easy.

1. is 2. had been 3. were 4. will be

24- Peyman will lend you some money, but I wish he

1. wouldn't 2. won't 3. will not 4. would

25- "Can you play a musical instrument? "

"No, but I wish I"

1. can 2. could have 3. was able 4. could

26- My mother is a wonderful writer. I wish she.....also a good cook.

1. were 2. will be 3. is 4. had been

WISH CLAUSES پاسخ

۱- آرزو مربوط به زمان گذشته است و باید ماضی بعید استفاده شود.

۲- زمان جمله حال است پس بعد از wish باید گذشته ساده باشد.

۳- رجوع شود به تست ۱

- ۴ ۲، رجوع شود به تست ۱
- ۵ ۲، رجوع شود به تست ۱
- ۶ ۳، رجوع شود به تست ۱
- ۷ ۳، رجوع شود به تست ۲
- ۸ ۴، آرزو مربوط به گذشته است به wished که گذشته است و به the other day به معنی چند روز قبل توجه کنید.
- ۹ ۲، رجوع شود به تست ۱
- ۱۰ ۲
- ۱۱ ۲، رجوع شود به تست ۱
- ۱۲ ۳، رجوع شود به تست ۲
- ۱۳ ۱، رجوع شود به تست ۱
- ۱۴ ۲، رجوع شود به تست ۸
- ۱۵ ۱، رجوع شود به تست ۲
- ۱۶ ۲، رجوع شود به تست ۲
- ۱۷ ۳، رجوع شود به تست ۱
- ۱۸ ۱، رجوع شود به تست ۲
- ۱۹ ۳، رجوع شود به تست ۲
- ۲۰ ۴، رجوع شود به تست ۸
- ۲۱ ۳، رجوع شود به تست ۱
- ۲۲ ۴، رجوع شود به تست ۸
- ۲۳ ۳، رجوع شود به تست ۲
- ۲۴ ۱، رجوع شود به تست ۸
- ۲۵ ۴، رجوع شود به تست ۸
- ۲۶ ۱، رجوع شود به تست ۲

Pronouns:

Pronouns take the place of nouns or noun phrases. Pronouns have three forms, as indicated:

---Although Seattle is damp, *it* is my favorite city.

NOMINATIVE: *I, we, you, he, she, it, they*

OBJECTIVE: *Me, us. You, him, her, it, them*

POSSESSIVE: *Mine, ours, yours, his, hers, its, theirs*

These pronouns appear in the following positions in sentences:

---I dislike smoking. (Nominative)

---Tell *me* the truth. (Objective)

---That book is *mine*. (Possessive)

---Is this beautiful plant *yours*?

---Yes, it's *ours*.

Reflexive pronouns add information to a sentence by pointing back to a noun or pronoun near the beginning of the sentence. Reflexive pronouns end in *-self* or *-selves*.

---The forest *itself* is a shelter.

---I'd rather do it *myself*.

---Tricia bought *herself* a new car.

---All her friends enjoyed *themselves* riding in the beautiful car.

Demonstrative pronouns direct attention to a specific person, place, or thing. There are only four demonstrative pronouns: *this, that, these, those*.

---*This* is my favorite movie.

---*That* was a fierce rain storm.

Relative pronouns introduce relative clauses and refer to some antecedent in the sentence.

The relative pronouns are *who, whose, whom, which*, and *that*.

---Shakespeare is the writer *who* wrote Romeo and Juliet.

---I remember that day, *which* was my Dad's birthday.

---The sound of bells is a sound *that* I like to hear.

Subject Pronouns:

The subject pronoun is used

1. When it is used as the subject of a verb.

---*They* live south of the equator.

2. when the subjects of two clauses are compared.

---They are more protected against the cold than *we* (are).

3. after the verb to be.

---It is *he* who brings home the bacon.

4. after *as* and *than*.

---She is not as tired as *I* (am).

Object pronouns:

The object pronoun is used:

1. when it is the direct object of a verb.

---She gave *him* the book.

2. after prepositions.

---I am afraid of *her*.

But

---I left *after she* came.

3. when the objects of two clauses are compared.

---It is easier for *them* than *us*.

Possessive Pronouns:

The possessive pronoun is used:

1. to replace a possessive adjective and a noun.

---I do my job, and you do *yours* (your job).

2. after the verb to be.

---The car is *mine*.

3. after the preposition *of* when it means "one of many".

---He is a friend of *mine*.

---It is a habit of *theirs*.

4. to replace the second possessive adjective and noun when they are being compared.

---Their life seems more difficult than *ours*.

Reflexive pronouns:

The reflexive pronoun is used:

1. to emphasize the subject noun or pronoun it refers to and to emphasize the fact that the subject did the action alone.

---I saw him myself.

---I myself saw him.

2. as the object of a verb when the subject and object are the same.

---They stand together to protect themselves from the cold.

3. as the object of preposition *by* when the subject did the action alone.

---The penguin chick is unable to get food by itself.

Don't confuse personal pronouns with contractions. Personal pronouns never have an apostrophe, while contractions always have an apostrophe. Use this chart:

Pronoun	Contraction
<i>Yours</i>	<i>you're (you are)</i>
<i>Its</i>	<i>it's (it is)</i>
<i>Their</i>	<i>they're (they are)</i>
<i>Whose</i>	<i>who's (who is)</i>

Tests:

A college bookstore that sells used textbooks stocks.....along with the new ones on the shelf under the course title.

- (A) its
- (B) their
- (C) a
- (D) them

1. Ahmad's mother hurt when we were cleaning our house.

1. herself 2. himself 3. themselves 4. ourselves

2. In a football game, Reza and Firuz hurt very badly.

1. him 2. them 3. himself 4. themselves

3. Maryam's husband hurt when we were working in the garden.

1. herself 2. himself 3. themselves 4. ourselves

4. Look at in the mirror then laugh at others.

1. herself 2. yourself 3. myself 4. himself

5. It is ours; they bought it for us.

1. himself 2. ourselves 3. themselves 4. yourself

6. I don't think he'll be able to manage the shop by

1. himself 2. ourselves 3. themselves 4. yourself

7. I took my brother out with to do some shopping.

1. I 2. me 3. mine 4. myself

8. You'd better invite your wife's brother to the party ...; otherwise, he won't come.

1. himself 2. themselves 3. yourself 4. yourselves

9. Mrs. Brown will go to the supermarket tomorrow.

1. her 2. herself 3. hers 4. she

10. "Be careful and take care of when you are crossing the street". My mother told us.

1. herself 2. yourself 3. yourselves 4. myself

11. My uncle's daughter had an expensive dictionary which was not

1. her 2. hers 3. herself 4. of her

12. Did Reza and Zahra enjoy when they were on holiday?

1. herself 2. themselves 3. himself 4. ourselves

13. People who talk to may get strange looks from other people.

1. herself 2. himself 3. themselves 4. ourselves

14. John made his sister a sandwich

1. herself 2. myself 3. yourself 4. himself

15. Do you like to study by?

1. myself 2. ourselves 3. yourself 4. themselves

16. With this extra money, I bought a present.

1. me 2. myself 3. yourself 4. yours

17. You and Ali broke the window

1. yourself 2. yourselves 3. himself 4. themselves

پاسخ تست های ضمائر تاکید و انعکاسی

۲-۱۲	۲-۱۱	۳-۱۰	۲-۹	۳-۸	۴-۷	۱-۶	۳-۵	۲-۴	۲-۳	۴-۲	۱-۱
							۲-۱۷	۲-۱۶	۳-۱۵	۴-۱۴	۳-۱۳

TOEFL:

Agreement: Subject and Possessive Pronouns

In all patterns, there must be agreement of subject pronoun and possessive pronouns that refer to the subject.

Remember that *it* refers to a small baby. Avoid using *it's* instead of *its* as a possessive pronoun.

It's means *it is*.

✗---Those of us who are over fifty years old should get their blood pressure checked regularly.

✓---Those of us who are over fifty years old should get our blood pressure checked regularly.

✗---Our neighbors know that when they go on vacation, we will get its mail for them.

✓---Our neighbors know that when *they* go on vacation, we will get their mail for them.

✗---A mother who works outside of the home has to prepare for emergencies when she cannot be there to take care of your sick child.

✓---A mother who works outside of the home has to prepare for emergencies when she cannot be there to take care of *her* sick child.

✗---Wine tends to lose their flavor when it has not been properly sealed.

✓---Wine tends to lose its flavor when it has not been properly sealed.

✗---Optional equipment on a car can add several hundred dollars to it's resale value when you trade it in.

✓---Optional equipment on a car can add several hundred dollars to its resale value when you trade it in.

The television programs we allow.....to watch influence their learning.

- (A) a children
- (B) our children
- (C) our child
- (D) their childs

Although maple trees are among the most colorful varieties in the fall, they lose its leaves sooner than oak trees.

One can only live without water for about ten days because almost 60 percent of their body is water.

Those of us who are over fifty years old should get their blood pressure checked regularly.

Tests: Peterson's Success

1. A beaver uses its strong front teeth to cut down trees and peel off its bark.

A

B

C

D

2. "Sprung" wood floors, used in top quality basketball courts and dance studios, they

A

B

C

are the safest surfaces for indoor exercise.

D

3. Ants cannot see red light, so it is possible to observe themselves in an artificial

A

B

nest without disturbing their activities.

C

D

4. The glaciers in Olympia National Park are unusual because they are found at

A

B

altitudes lower than these at which glaciers are usually found.

C

D

5. In his novels, Sinclair Lewis drew critical portraits of Americans who thought of

A
them as model citizens.
D

6. Elizabeth Peabody, founder of the first American kindergarten, she helped gain
A B
acceptance of that institution as a regular part of public education.

C D
7. Almost bacteria have strong cell walls much like those of plants.

A B C D
8. Bees collect pollen, which furnishes protein for its diet.
A B C D

9. A small business often limits their operations to a single neighborhood or a group
A B C
of neighboring communities.
D

10. A caricature is a picture in which the subject's distinctive features they are deliberately
exaggerated. A B C
D

11. The principles used in air conditioning are basically the same as those used by the
A B C
human body to cool himself.
D

12. In that age of computers, it is difficult to imagine how tedious the work of
A B C
bookkeepers and clerks must have been in the past.
D

Prepositions:

Here are the 30 most common prepositions:

as / at / against / around / among / across / after
about / by / between / before / behind / during
for / from / into / in / including / like / of / on / off / over /
to / towards / through / under / upon / with / without / within

TOEFL: Remember that *besides* (prep./adv) means *in addition to*. *Beside* (prep.) means *near*.

Besides + noun/adj

✓---Besides our dog, we have two cats and a canary.

✓---Besides white, we stock green and blue.

Beside + noun

✓---We sat beside the teacher.

✗---Beside Marge, three couples are invited.

✓---Besides Marge, three couples are invited.

✗---Beside Domino's, four other pizza places deliver.

✓---Besides Domino's, four other pizza places deliver.

✗---To lead a well-balanced life, one needs to have other interests beside studying.

✓---To lead a well-balanced life, one needs to have other interests besides studying.

✗---Beside taxi service, there isn't any public transportation in town.

✓---Besides taxi service, there isn't any public transportation in town.

✗---Janice has lots of friends beside her roommate.

✓---Janice has lots of friends besides her roommate.

---.....a mayor, many city governments employ a city manager.

- (A) Beside
- (B) *Besides*
- (C) And
- (D) Also

---To receive a degree from an American university, one must take many courses beside those in one's major field.

➔➔ Because of and Because

Remember that because of is a prepositional phrase. It introduces a noun or a noun phrase.

Because is a conjunction. It introduces a clause with a subject and a verb.

➔➔ Avoid using because of before a subject and verb. Avoid using because before a noun which is not followed by a verb.

✗---Classes will be canceled tomorrow because a national holiday.
✓---Classes will be canceled tomorrow because it is a national holiday.
or
✓---Classes will be canceled tomorrow because of a national holiday.

✗---She was absent because of her cold was worse.
✓---She was absent because her cold was worse.
or
✓---She was absent because of her cold.

✗---John's family is very happy because his being awarded a scholarship.
✓---John's family is very happy because he has been awarded a scholarship.
or
✓---John's family is very happy because of his being awarded a scholarship.

✗---She didn't buy it because of the price was too high.
✓---She didn't buy it because the price was too high.
or
✓---She didn't buy it because of the price.

✗---It was difficult to see the road clearly because the rain.
✓---It was difficult to see the road clearly because it was raining.
or
✓---It was difficult to see the road clearly because of the rain.

.....in the cultivation of a forest, trees need more careful planning than any other crop does.

- (A) Because the time and area involved
- (B) For the time and area involving
- (C) Because of the time and area involved
- (D) As a cause of the time and area involved

---Many roads and railroads were built in the 1880s because of the industrial cities needed a network to link them with sources of supply.

Despite /In spite of:

---Despite his physical handicap, he has become a successful businessman.

---Jane will be admitted to the university in spite of her bad grades.

TOEFL:

Accede to
According to
Approve of
Ashamed of
Bored with
Capable of
Compete with
Composed of
Concerned with
Conscious of
Depend on
Effects on
Equal to
Except for
From now on
From time to time
Frown on
Glance at, through
Incapable of
In conflict
Inferior to
In the habit of
In the near future
Knowledge of
Near; next to
Of the opinion
On top of
Opposite

Prior to
 Regard to
 Related to
 Respect for
 Responsible for
 Similar to
 Since
 Until
 With regard to

A

Act on	ability to do	according to
Account for	ask for	as far as is known
At least	at one time	a cluster of
A great deal	a number of	a minimum of

B

Bare of	belong to	begin doing
Begin to	benefit from	be able to
Be adopted to	be associated with	be appreciated for
Be based on	be beneficial to	be capable of
Be characterized by	be composed of	be concerned with
Be considered to be	be credited with doing	be dedicated to doing
Be depend on	be derived from	be destined to
Be divided into	be engaged in	be equal to
Be expose to	be familiar with	be famous for
Be filled with	be forced to do	be found in
Be full of	be inclined to	be involved in
Be known as	be known for	be made from
Be made of	be noted for	be obtained from
Be originated from	be rich in	be related to
Be resistant to	be subjected to	be supposed to
Be similar to	be suited for	be typical of
Be valuable for	be viewed as	be woven from
Break away from	bring about	bring ... to light
By means of		

C

Close to	change ... into ...	coincide with
Consist of	contrary to	contribute to
Concentrate on	convert... into ...	combine ... with ...
Comment on	come into contact with	
Come from	come into contract with	
Carry out		

D

Date back to	deal with	dedicate to doing
Demand for	depend on	deter sb. from doing
Devote to	differ from	draw ... from ...
Do no harm to	do/deal with	due to + n.
E		
Excel in/at		
F		
Feed on	focus attention on	
G		
Give off	give way to	give up doing
Grant sb. sth.		
I		
Interest in	interfere with	in addition to
In connection with	in danger of	in history
In nature	in honor of	in comparison with
In relation to	in response to	in spite of
In the future		
j		
Join ... with ...		
L		
Lead to	live in	look for
M		
Make up	meet one's goal	minge with
More ... than ...		
N		
Native to	no more than	not more than
O		
On account of = because of		
P		
Participate in	pay for	permit sb. to do
Play a key role	protect from	

R

Range from ... to ...
 rely on
 result from

rank first among
 regardless of
 run for

refer to
 rest on

S

Settle down
 Shield ...from...
 Spend ... doing
 Start to
 Succeed in doing

sever as
 so ... as to
 spread to
 strive to

share ... with ...
 specialize in doing
 start doing
 substitute for

T

Take place
 The ratio...of ...to

take charge of
 the use of

tend to
 think of

---The ratio of men to women at the conference was ten to one/10:1.

Together with

to a great extent

transform...into..

U

Use up

V

Vary in

W

Warn sb. of sth.

✗---Excepting for the Gulf Coast region, most of the nation will have very pleasant weather tonight and tomorrow.

✓---Except for the Gulf Coast region, most of the nation will have very pleasant weather tonight and tomorrow.

✗---In recent years, educators have become more concerned of bilingualism.

✓---In recent years, educators have become more concerned with bilingualism.

✗---He always does what he pleases, without regard of the rules and regulations.

✓---He always does what he pleases, without regard to the rules and regulations.

✗---The bank opposite over the university isn't open on Saturdays.

✓---The bank opposite the university isn't open on Saturdays.

✗---The customs of other countries are not inferior with those of our own country.

✓---The customs of other countries are not inferior to those of our own country.

Tests:discovery of insulin, it was not possible to treat diabetes.

(A) Prior to the

(B) Prior

(C) The prior

(D) To prior

The price of gold depends in several factors, including supply and demand in relation to the value of the dollar.

At	In	On
PRECISE TIME	MONTHS, YEARS, CENTURIES and LONG PERIODS	DAYS and DATES
at 3 o'clock	in May	on Sunday
at 10.30am	in summer	on Tuesdays
at noon	in the summer	on 6 March
at dinnertime	in 1990	on 25 Dec. 2010
at bedtime	in the 1990s	on Christmas Day
at sunrise	in the next century	on Independence Day
at sunset	in the Ice Age	on my birthday
at the moment	in the past/future	on New Year's Eve

Look at these examples:

---I have a meeting at 9 am.

---The shop closes at midnight.

---Jane went home at lunchtime.

---In England, it often snows in December.

---Do you think we will go to Jupiter in the future?

---There should be a lot of progress in the next century.

- Do you work on Mondays?
- Her birthday is on 20 November.
- Where will you be on New Year's Day?

Notice the use of the preposition of time **at** in the following standard expressions:

Expression	Example
at night	The stars shine <u>at night</u> .
at the weekend	I don't usually work <u>at the weekend</u> .
at Christmas/Easter	I stay with my family <u>at Christmas</u> .
at the same time	We finished the test <u>at the same time</u> .
at present	He's not home <u>at present</u> . Try later.

Notice the use of the prepositions of time **in** and **on** in these common expressions:

In	On
in the morning	on Tuesday morning
in the mornings	on Saturday mornings
in the afternoon(s)	on Sunday afternoons
in the evening(s)	on Monday evening

➔➔➔ When we say **last, next, every, this** we do not also use **at, in, on**.

- I went to London last June. (*not in last June*)
- He's coming back next Tuesday. (*not on next Tuesday*)
- I go home every Easter. (*not at every Easter*)
- We'll call you this evening. (*not in this evening*)

AT

1- قبل از بخش معيني از زمان

at midnight, **at** night, **at** 4:30, **at** six

2- قبل از سن

at sixteen = **at** the age of sixteen

3- قبل از اعیاد و جشن ها

at the new year, **at** Christmas

4- قبل از ترکیبات مربوط به زمان

at the moment, **at** the end, **at** last, **at** war, **at** first

5- گاهی اوقات برای اشاره به مکان استفاده می شود.

---The plane stops for an hour at Frankfurt .

---It's very hot at the center of the Earth.

6- قبل از نام شهر که منظوردانشگاه آن شهر می باشد.

---He is a student at Oxford.

7- قبل از فعالیت های گروهی

at a party, **at** a lecture, **at** a concert

8- معمولا برای آدرس از at استفاده می شود.

---Are you still at the same address ?

9- اگر خیابان همراه با شماره باشد از at استفاده می شود.

---She lives at 73 Albert street.

IN

1- قبل از اوقات مختلف روز

in the morning, **in** the afternoon, **in** the evening.

2- قبل از ماه های سال

in July, **in** May, **in** March

3- قبل از وسایل نقلیه کوچک مانند تاکسی

---She came in a taxi.

4- برای بیان طول مدت انجام کار

in 2 weeks, **in** 3 hours, **in** 2 months

5- قبل از ترکیبات زمانی مانند:

in time, *in* the past time, *in* the beginning

6- قبل از اسم مکان که به معنی داخل می باشد.

---I don't think he is in his office.

---Let's go for a walk in the woods.

ON

1- قبل از روز های هفته

on Sunday, *on* Monday, *on* Friday ,....

2- برای بیان روز معینی از سال و ماه

on July 10th, *on* Christmas day.

3- قبل از خیابان که همراه با نام آن باشد .

---She lives on Bahar street.

4- برای مکان هایی که در سطح قرار دارند .

---The book is on the table.

---There is a picture on the wall.

5- برای نقطه ای روی یک خط

---His house is on the way form Azadi to Enghlab.

6- قبل از وسایل نقلیه عمومی مانند هواپیما، قطار، اتوبوس، کشتی

---There is no room on the bus . Let's get off.

جایی تو اتوبس نیست . پیاده شویم

---He is arriving on the 3.15 train .

---We are booked on flight 604 .

---It took five days to cross the Atlantic on the Queen Elizabeth.

---The map is on page 32.

---I opened the book at page 32.

in/ at church .

in the sky.

in/ at school/ college

on farm

at home/ work

in the rain

in a picture

in bed/ hospital/ prison

BY

1- به معنی نزدیک و کنار

---He was standing by the fire.

2- در مورد بیان زمان به معنی تا

By the end of the meal ,everybody was drunk.

3- برای انجام کاری (به معنی به وسیله، با)

---I killed the spider by hitting.

---I got where I am by hard work.

4- هیچ وقت استفاده **by** با **with** اشتباه نگیرید زیرا هنگامی از **with** استفاده می شود که انجام کار به کمک ابزار و واسیله ای باشد.

---I killed the spider with a shoe.

هنگامی که در حال مسافرت با اتوبس هستیم از حرف اضافه **on** استفاده می شود. اما اگر مسافرت تمام شده باشد از حرف اضافه **by** استفاده می کنیم .

---The are coming on bus.

---They went to Tabriz by bus.

for: به معنی به مدت

---My father was in hospital for six weeks.

between, among: بین، میان

among: مابین چند چیز یا چند کس

---She was crying among the jungle.

between: ما بین دو چیز یا دو کس

---Andy usually sits between Sara and Mary.

above, over

1- به معنی بالاتر

---The water came up above / over our knees.

---Can you see the helicopter above / over the place.

2- وقتی چیزی مستقیماً بالاتر از چیز دیگر نیست از above استفاده می شود.

---We have got a little house above the lake. (not over the lake)

3- وقتی یک چیز، چیز دیگری را می پوشاند از over استفاده می شود.

---He put on a coat over his pajamas.

4- از over / across زمانی استفاده می شود که یک چیز از چیز دیگری عبور می کند.

---The plane was flying over/ across Denmark.

5- از above برای اندازه گیری درجه حرارت و ارتفاع استفاده می شود.

---The temperature is above zero.

---The summit of Everest is about 8000 meters above the sea level.

6- از over برای بیشتر بودن سن و سرعت به کار می رود .

---You have to be over 18 to see this film.

---The police said she was driving at over 110 mph.

---There were over 100,000 people at the festival.

to: برای نشان دادن حرکت فاعل به طرف مسیر می باشد.

---He went to Mashhad.

under: به معنی "زیر، در زیر، مستقیماً زیر چیزی" می باشد.

---There is a book under the table.

نکته: provide به دو صورت به کار می رود:

Provide something for somebody

Provide somebody with something

---The school provides different books for the students.

---The school provides the students with different books.

Tests:

1. He started going to school..... the age of five.

1. in

2. on

3. at

4. to

2. the daytime the streets are crowded but night they are quite deserted.

1. in, at 2. at, in 3. on, in 4. at, on

3. "Where is Sara?" "She is the yard."

1. into 2. in 3. among 4. through

4. The answer can be found page 88.

1. in 2. on 3. at 4. to

5. We went to the cinema Saturday evening.

1. in 2. at 3. during 4. on

6. We went to Germany Christmas.

1. at 2. in 3. on 4. ...

7. A new bridge is being built the River Rain.

1. over 2. with 3. by 4. at

8. I have been learning English five years.

1. before 2. during 3. since 4. for

9. Who is going to look your children while you are work.

1. for, in 2. at, on 3. after, at 4. for, at

10. Which of the following sentences is correct?

1. the pencil in the table is red new
2. the red pencil is new on the bench
3. the red pencil on the desk is new
4. the pencil is red new under the desk

11. Mr. Farhadi described

1. the photo us 2. us to the photo
3. the photo to us 4. to us the photo

12. She ate her cake fork.

1. by a 2. with 3. with a 4. by

13. I don't like to borrow money my friend.

1. of 2. for 3. from 4. to

14. How long would it take to swim the river?

1. over 2. across 3. above 4. on

15. I asked

1. some questions to them 2. them some questions
3. some questions form them 4. some questions of them

16. I need to have your address; please write

1. down it for me 2. it for me down
3. it down for me 4. down for me it

17. The classes at my university are different your university.

1. than that at 2. from those at 3. from 4. than those at

18. The result of the experiment will depend how careful the students are.

1. to 2. on 3. with 4. over

19. Put your Jacket if you are going out in this weather.

1. off 2. on 3. up 4. out

20. You are going to the post office, please post this letter me.

1. by 2. for 3. from 4. to

21. You must look the new words in a dictionary.

1. at 2. on 3. up 4. out

22. There'll be a good program TV tonight.

1. at 2. in 3. on 4. over

23. The spy escaped prison a few weeks ago.

1. from 2. from out 3. out 4. of

24. I don't understand his point. Please

1. explain it to me
2. explain me it
3. explain it for me
4. explain for me it

25. Minoo said, "I like history. It's very interesting. "I think she is interested ... history.

1. to 2. of 3. at 4. in

26. How much did you pay this book?

1. with 2. for 3. on 4. upon

27. The teacher explained the first lesson the students.

1. at 2. for 3. to 4. with

28. I've looked my pen everywhere but I cannot find it.

1. after 2. for 3. on 4. out

29. I will meet youthe Starter Hotel.

1. in 2. at 3. on 4. of

30. They are getting marriedFriday.....six o'clock Z.....the evening.

1. in, at, in 2. on, at, in 3. at, in, on 4. in, in, at

31. He came to this countryAugust 5/1968.

1. on 2. in 3. of 4. from

32. The event took placeAugust.

1. in 2. at 3. on 4. to

33. They will never go outnight.

1. up 2. away 3. on 4. at

34. When you are sitting.....the table for dinner, don't put your elbows....the table .

1. on, on 2. at, on 3. on, at 4. at, in

35. He felt sick his first class and had to be taken to hospital.

1. during 2. while 3. for 4. when

36. "Has the tailor made your suit?" "No, it won't be finished next Tuesday."

1. until 2. while 3. after 4. during

37. Mr. Alavi lived in Tehran when I left for Tabriz. I think he is ... living in Tehran.

1. still 2. yet 3. already 4. anymore

43. Imagine yourself..... some clear stream..... mountains in the background.

1. in/back 2. in/in 3. beside/with 4. besides/with

44. The largest dictionaries include the histories of words..... the meanings.

1. due to 2. besides 3. although 4. so

45. Sales in 1995 but then fell in 1996.

1. raised 2. rose 3. have risen 4. have raised

46. Before the vaccination campaign of the ministry was introduced, the infant mortality rate had..... to an alarming extent.

1. risen 2. raised 3 rose 4. raise

47. many significant developments overseas last year was an agreement permitting English and Spanish companies to manufacture computers in the Netherlands.

1. In spite of 2. Including 3. Among 4. Between

48. The temperature in the north east will be20 and 25 degrees today.

1. between 2. among 3. in 4. on

49. The original oil painting looks the reproduction.

1. alike 2. like 3. likes 4. similar

50. In many ways, riding a bike is driving a car.

1. similar to 2. similar 3. alike 4. likes

51. Choose the incorrect word.

---When two products are basically the same as, advertising can influence the public's choice.

- a b c d

52. Choose the correct sentence.

1. The choice is between a vanilla, chocolate, and strawberry ice cream cone.
2. Profits are divided among the footballers and the company.
3. The property was divided equally among his son and daughter.
4. The work is distributed among the secretary and the receptionist.

53. We must provide in our town.

1. help for the poor 2. the poor with help
3. the help with the poor 4. 1 & 2

پاسخ تستهای حروف اضافه

۱-۷	۱-۶	۴-۵	۲-۴	۲-۳	۱-۲	۳-۱
					۴-۸	
۲-۱۵	۲-۱۴	۳-۱۳	۳-۱۲	۳-۱۱	۳-۱۰	۳-۹
					۳-۱۶	
۱-۲۳	۳-۲۲	۳-۲۱	۲-۲۰	۲-۱۹	۲-۱۸	۲-۱۷
					۱-۲۴	
۱-۳۱	۲-۳۰	۲-۲۹	۲-۲۸	۳-۲۷	۲-۲۶	۴-۲۵
					۱-۳۲	
۲-۳۹	۲-۳۸	۱-۳۷	۱-۳۶	۱-۳۵	۲-۳۴	۴-۳۳
					۱-۴۰	
۳-۴۷	۱-۴۶	۲-۴۵	۲-۴۴	۳-۴۳	۱-۴۲	۳-۴۱
					۱-۴۸	
		۴-۵۳	۲-۵۲	۲-۵۱	۱-۵۰	۲-۴۹

Tests: Peterson's Success

1.....seed of a flowering plant is covered by a dense protective coat.

- (A) On each
- (B) Each
- (C) Each of
- (D) That each

2. Dynamite is ordinarily detonated.....called a blasting cap.

D

12. A substance that is harmless to a person who has no allergies can cause mild to serious reactions in a person.....allergies.

- (A) has
- (B) which having
- (C) can have
- (D) with

13. The first stage on the manufacturing of all types of clothing is the cutting of the material. A B C D

14. All of the wheat grown throughout the world belongs one of fourteen species.

A B C D

15. In 1886 a number of national unions formed the American Federation of Labor

- (A) Samuel Gompers was its leader
- (B) under the leadership of Samuel Gompers
- (C) which, under Samuel Gompers' leadership
- (D) Samuel Gompers led it

16. Harmonicas and autoharps.....folk instruments.

- (A) are examples
- (B) for example
- (C) are examples of
- (D) as examples of

17. There are approximately 600 different species of trees native of the continental

A B C D

United States.

18.....industries, such as banking and travel, in which computers are not a convenience but a necessity.

- (A) Where some
- (B) In some
- (C) Some
- (D) There are some

19. Waterwheels, which appeared on the fourth century B.C., were probably the first

A

B

C

machines not powered by humans or animals.

D

20. Since centuries, Southwestern Indian tribes have valued turquoise and have used

A

B

C

it in jewelry.

D